

# HP Data Protector 7.00

## Disaster Recovery Guide

HP Part Number: N/A  
Published: October 2013  
Edition: Sixth



© Copyright 2012, 2013 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Confidential computer software. Valid license from HP required for possession, use or copying. Consistent with FAR 12.211 and 12.212, Commercial Computer Software, Computer Software Documentation, and Technical Data for Commercial Items are licensed to the U.S. Government under vendor's standard commercial license.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Intel®, Itanium®, Pentium®, Intel Inside®, and the Intel Inside logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows XP®, and Windows NT® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Adobe and Acrobat are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Oracle® is a registered US trademark of Oracle Corporation, Redwood City, California.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

LiveVault® is a registered trademark of Autonomy Corporation plc.

---

# Contents

Publication history.....	7
About this guide.....	8
Intended audience.....	8
Documentation set.....	8
Guides.....	8
Help.....	11
Documentation map.....	11
Abbreviations.....	11
Map.....	12
Integrations.....	12
Document conventions and symbols.....	13
Data Protector graphical user interface.....	14
General information.....	14
HP technical support.....	14
Subscription service.....	14
HP websites.....	15
<b>1 Introduction.....</b>	<b>16</b>
Overview.....	16
Disaster recovery process.....	17
Disaster recovery methods.....	18
Manual disaster recovery method.....	19
Disaster recovery using disk delivery.....	19
One Button Disaster Recovery (OBDR).....	20
Automated System Recovery (ASR).....	20
Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery (EADR).....	20
Data Protector integrations and disaster recovery.....	21
<b>2 Planning and preparing for a disaster recovery.....</b>	<b>22</b>
In this chapter.....	22
Planning.....	22
Consistent and relevant backup.....	23
Creating a consistent and relevant backup.....	23
Encrypted backups.....	23
Updating and editing the System Recovery Data (SRD).....	24
Updating using the SRD update wizard.....	24
Updating using omnisrdupdate.....	24
Updating using a post-exec script.....	25
Editing the SRD file.....	26
<b>3 Disaster recovery for Windows systems.....</b>	<b>27</b>
Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery of a Windows system.....	27
Overview.....	27
Requirements.....	27
Limitation.....	28
Preparation.....	28
Recovery.....	30
Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery of a Windows client.....	32
Overview.....	32
Requirements.....	33
Limitations.....	33
Preparation.....	33

Recovery.....	34
Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery of a Windows system.....	34
Overview.....	35
Prerequisites.....	36
Limitations.....	37
Preparation.....	38
Client backup.....	38
Considerations.....	38
The DR image (recovery set) file.....	39
The kb.cfg file on Windows XP and Windows Server 2003.....	40
Preparing the encryption keys.....	40
The Phase 1 Startup file (P1S).....	40
Preparing a DR OS image for disaster recovery.....	41
Preparing a disaster recovery image.....	41
Recovery.....	42
One Button Disaster Recovery of a Windows system.....	47
Overview.....	48
Prerequisites.....	48
Limitations.....	49
Preparation.....	50
Creating a backup specification for OBDR and performing an OBDR backup.....	50
Modifying an OBDR backup specification to use disk image backup.....	53
The kb.cfg file on Windows XP and Windows Server 2003.....	54
Preparing the encryption keys.....	54
Recovery.....	54
Automated System Recovery.....	59
Overview.....	59
Requirements.....	60
Hardware configuration.....	60
Hard Disk Drives.....	60
Limitations.....	60
Preparation.....	61
Local devices.....	62
Recovery.....	63
Advanced recovery tasks.....	64
Restoring the Microsoft Cluster Server specifics.....	65
Possible scenarios.....	65
Disaster recovery of a secondary node.....	65
Disaster recovery of the primary node.....	66
Merging P1S files of all nodes for EADR.....	67
Restoring hard disk signatures on Windows.....	67
Restoring Cluster Shared Volumes and VHD files.....	68
Automated System Recovery on a Majority Node Set cluster.....	68
Restoring the Data Protector Cell Manager specifics.....	69
Making IDB consistent (all methods).....	69
Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery specifics.....	69
One Button Disaster Recovery specifics.....	70
Automated System Recovery specifics.....	70
Restoring Internet Information Server (IIS) specifics.....	70
Troubleshooting.....	71
Editing the kb.cfg file.....	71
Recovery using an edited SRD file.....	71
AMDR/ASR .....	73
EADR /OBDR.....	73
Updating the ASR diskettes using the CLI interface.....	74

Unlocking volumes locked with Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption.....	74
<b>4 Disaster recovery for UNIX systems.....</b>	<b>76</b>
Manual disaster recovery of an HP-UX client.....	76
Overview.....	76
Using custom installation medium.....	76
Overview.....	76
Preparation.....	77
Recovery.....	78
Using system recovery tools.....	79
Overview.....	79
Preparation.....	79
Prerequisites.....	79
Creating an archive using make_tape_recovery.....	80
Creating an archive using make_net_recovery.....	80
Recovery.....	80
Recovery from the backup tape.....	80
Recovery from the network.....	81
Disk delivery disaster recovery of a UNIX client.....	81
Overview.....	81
Limitations.....	82
Preparation.....	82
Recovery.....	84
Manual disaster recovery of a UNIX Cell Manager.....	85
Overview.....	85
Limitation.....	85
Preparation.....	85
Recovery.....	86
Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery of a Linux system.....	86
Overview.....	87
Requirements.....	87
Limitations.....	88
Preparation.....	88
The DR ISO image file.....	88
Preparing the encryption keys.....	90
The Phase 1 Startup file (P1S).....	90
Preparing DR ISO image.....	90
Recovery.....	91
One Button Disaster Recovery of a Linux system.....	93
Overview.....	93
Requirements.....	93
Limitations.....	94
Preparation.....	94
OBDR backup.....	95
Preparing the encryption keys.....	95
Recovery.....	96
Advanced recovery tasks on Linux systems.....	98
Restoring the Data Protector Cell Manager specifics.....	98
Making IDB consistent (all methods).....	98
Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery specifics.....	99
One Button Disaster Recovery specifics.....	99
Recovery using an edited SRD file.....	99
<b>5 Troubleshooting disaster recovery.....</b>	<b>102</b>
In this chapter.....	102
Before you begin.....	102

General troubleshooting.....	102
The AUTODR.log file.....	102
Debugging disaster recovery sessions.....	103
Setting omnirc options during disaster recovery.....	104
The drm.cfg file on Windows systems.....	105
Common problems.....	106
Problems on Windows systems.....	106
Assisted manual disaster recovery.....	108
Disk delivery disaster recovery.....	108
Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery and One Button Disaster Recovery.....	109
Common EADR and OBDR problems.....	109
Problems on Windows systems.....	110
Problems on Windows Itanium systems.....	112
Problems on Linux systems.....	113
Automated system recovery.....	113
<b>A Further information.....</b>	<b>115</b>
Moving kill links on HP-UX 11.x.....	115
Windows manual disaster recovery preparation template.....	115
<b>B Recovery to dissimilar hardware.....</b>	<b>117</b>
When dissimilar hardware restore might be needed.....	117
Overview.....	117
Requirements.....	118
Limitations.....	118
Drivers.....	119
Preparation.....	119
Recovery.....	119
Recovering the system.....	119
Restoring and preparing the OS.....	120
Correcting network mappings.....	120
After the OS is successfully restored.....	121
Restoring user and application data.....	121
Recovery of a physical system to a virtual machine (P2V).....	121
Recovery of a virtual machine to a physical system (V2P).....	121
<b>Glossary.....</b>	<b>122</b>
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>152</b>

# Publication history

Guide updates may be issued between editions to correct errors or document product changes. To ensure that you receive updated or new editions, subscribe to the appropriate product support service. See your HP sales representative for details.

**Table 1 Edition history**

Part number	Guide edition	Product
N/A	March 2012	Data Protector Release 7.00
N/A	April 2012	Data Protector Release 7.00
N/A	July 2012	Data Protector Release 7.00 with any of the following patch bundles: DPWINBDL_00701, DPUXBDL_00701, DPLNXBDL_00701
N/A	October 2012	Data Protector Release 7.00 with any of the following patch bundles: DPWINBDL_00701, DPUXBDL_00701, DPLNXBDL_00701
N/A	March 2013	Data Protector Release 7.00 with any of the following patches: DPWIN_00631, PHSS_43339, DPLNX_00241
N/A	October 2013	Data Protector Release 7.00 with any of the following patch bundles: DPWINBDL_00703, DPUXBDL_00703, DPLNXBDL_00703

---

# About this guide

This guide provides information about:

- planning and preparing for a disaster
- testing a disaster recovery procedure
- successfully performing a disaster recovery

## Intended audience

This guide is intended for backup administrators responsible for planning, preparing, testing, and executing a disaster recovery, with knowledge of:

- Data Protector concepts
- Data Protector backup and restore procedures

## Documentation set

Other guides and Help provide related information.

## Guides

Data Protector guides are available in the electronic PDF format. Install the PDF files during the Data Protector setup procedure by selecting the installation component *English Documentation (Guides, Help)* on Windows systems and the installation component *OB2-DOCS* on UNIX systems. Once installed, the guides reside in the directory *Data\_Protector\_home/docs* on Windows systems and in the directory */opt/omni/doc/C* on UNIX systems.

You can find these documents from the Manuals page of the HP support website:

<http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>

In the Storage section, click **Storage Software** and then select your product.

- *HP Data Protector Concepts Guide*  
This guide describes Data Protector concepts and provides background information on how Data Protector works. It is intended to be used with the task-oriented Help.
- *HP Data Protector Installation and Licensing Guide*  
This guide describes how to install the Data Protector software, taking into account the operating system and architecture of your environment. This guide also gives details on how to upgrade Data Protector, as well as how to obtain the proper licenses for your environment.
- *HP Data Protector Troubleshooting Guide*  
This guide describes how to troubleshoot problems you may encounter when using Data Protector.
- *HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery Guide*  
This guide describes how to plan, prepare for, test, and perform a disaster recovery.



- *HP Data Protector Integration Guides*

These guides describe how to configure and use Data Protector to back up and restore various databases and applications. They are intended for backup administrators or operators. There are six guides:

- *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for Microsoft Applications: SQL Server, SharePoint Server, and Exchange Server*

This guide describes the integrations of Data Protector with the following Microsoft applications: Microsoft SQL Server, Microsoft SharePoint Server, and Microsoft Exchange Server.

- *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for Oracle and SAP*

This guide describes the integrations of Data Protector with Oracle Server, SAP R/3, SAP MaxDB, and SAP HANA Appliance.

- *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for IBM Applications: Informix, DB2, and Lotus Notes/Domino*

This guide describes the integrations of Data Protector with the following IBM applications: Informix Server, IBM DB2 UDB, and Lotus Notes/Domino Server.

- *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for Sybase, Network Node Manager, and Network Data Management Protocol Server*

This guide describes the integrations of Data Protector with Sybase Server, HP Network Node Manager, and Network Data Management Protocol Server.

- *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for Virtualization Environments*

This guide describes the integrations of Data Protector with virtualization environments: VMware Virtual Infrastructure, VMware vSphere, VMware vCloud Director, Microsoft Hyper-V, and Citrix XenServer.

- *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service*

This guide describes the integration of Data Protector with the Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service. This guide also documents application writer specifics.

- *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for HP Operations Manager for UNIX*

This guide describes how to monitor and manage the health and performance of the Data Protector environment with HP Operations Manager and HP Service Navigator on UNIX systems.

- *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for HP Operations Manager for Windows*

This guide describes how to monitor and manage the health and performance of the Data Protector environment with HP Operations Manager on Windows systems.

- *HP Data Protector Zero Downtime Backup Concepts Guide*

This guide describes Data Protector zero downtime backup and instant recovery concepts and provides background information on how Data Protector works in a zero downtime backup environment. It is intended to be used with the task-oriented *HP Data Protector Zero Downtime Backup Administrator's Guide* and the *HP Data Protector Zero Downtime Backup Integration Guide*.

- *HP Data Protector Zero Downtime Backup Administrator's Guide*

This guide describes how to configure and use the integration of Data Protector with HP P4000 SAN Solutions, HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family, HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family, HP P10000 Storage Systems, and EMC Symmetrix Remote Data Facility and TimeFinder. It is

intended for backup administrators or operators. It covers the zero downtime backup, instant recovery, and the restore of filesystems and disk images.

- *HP Data Protector Zero Downtime Backup Integration Guide*

This guide describes how to configure and use Data Protector to perform zero downtime backup, instant recovery, and standard restore of Oracle Server, SAP R/3, Microsoft Exchange Server, and Microsoft SQL Server databases.

- *HP Data Protector Granular Recovery Extension User Guide for Microsoft Exchange Server*

This guide describes how to configure and use the Granular Recovery Extension for Microsoft Exchange Server 2010 environments. Graphical user interface of the Data Protector Granular Recovery Extension for Microsoft Exchange Server is integrated into the Microsoft Management Console. This guide is intended for Microsoft Exchange Server administrators and Data Protector backup administrators.

- *HP Data Protector Granular Recovery Extension User Guide for Microsoft SharePoint Server*

This guide describes how to configure and use the Data Protector Granular Recovery Extension for Microsoft SharePoint Server. The Data Protector Granular Recovery Extension is integrated into Microsoft SharePoint Server Central Administration and enables you to recover individual items. This guide is intended for Microsoft SharePoint Server administrators and Data Protector backup administrators.

- *HP Data Protector Granular Recovery Extension User Guide for VMware vSphere*

This guide describes how to configure and use the Data Protector Granular Recovery Extension for VMware vSphere. The Data Protector Granular Recovery Extension is integrated into VMware vCenter Server and enables you to recover individual items. This guide is intended for VMware vCenter Server users and Data Protector backup administrators.

- *HP Data Protector Media Operations User Guide*

This guide provides information for network administrators responsible for maintaining and backing up systems on the tracking and management of offline storage media. It describes the tasks of installing and configuring the application, performing daily media operations and producing reports.

- *HP Data Protector Product Announcements, Software Notes, and References*

This guide gives a description of new features of HP Data Protector 7.00. It also provides information on installation requirements, required patches, and limitations, as well as known issues and workarounds.

- *HP Data Protector Product Announcements, Software Notes, and References for Integrations to HP Operations Manager*

This guide fulfills a similar function for the HP Operations Manager integration.

- *HP Data Protector Media Operations Product Announcements, Software Notes, and References*

This guide fulfills a similar function for Media Operations.

- *HP Data Protector Command Line Interface Reference*

This guide describes the Data Protector command-line interface, command options, and their usage as well as provides some basic command-line examples. It is located in the following directory:

**Windows systems:** `Data_Protector_home\docs\MAN`

**UNIX systems:** `/opt/omni/doc/C/`

On UNIX systems, you can use the `omniintro` man page to display a list of the available Data Protector commands. You can then execute the `man CommandName` command to retrieve information about a specific Data Protector command.

## Help

Data Protector provides Help topics and context-sensitive (F1) Help for Windows and UNIX platforms. Install the Help during the Data Protector setup procedure by selecting the installation component English Documentation (Guides, Help) on Windows systems and the installation component OB2-DOCS on UNIX systems. Once installed, the Help resides in the directory `Data_Protector_home\help\enu` on Windows systems and in the directory `/opt/omni/help/C/help_topics` on UNIX systems.

You can access the Help from the top-level directory of any installation DVD-ROM without installing Data Protector:

**Windows systems:** Open `DP_help.chm`.

**UNIX systems:** Unpack the zipped tar file `DP_help.tar.gz`, and access the Help system through `DP_help.htm`.

## Documentation map

### Abbreviations

Abbreviations in the documentation map that follows are explained below. The documentation item titles are all preceded by the words "HP Data Protector".

Abbreviation	Documentation item
CLI	Command Line Interface Reference
Concepts	Concepts Guide
DR	Disaster Recovery Guide
GS	Getting Started Guide
GRE-Exchange	Granular Recovery Extension User Guide for Microsoft Exchange Server
GRE-SPS	Granular Recovery Extension User Guide for Microsoft SharePoint Server
GRE-VMware	Granular Recovery Extension User Guide for VMware vSphere
Help	Help
IG-IBM	Integration Guide for IBM Applications: Informix, DB2, and Lotus Notes/Domino
IG-MS	Integration Guide for Microsoft Applications: SQL Server, SharePoint Server, and Exchange Server
IG-O/S	Integration Guide for Oracle and SAP
IG-OMU	Integration Guide for HP Operations Manager for UNIX
IG-OMW	Integration Guide for HP Operations Manager for Windows
IG-Var	Integration Guide for Sybase, Network Node Manager, and Network Data Management Protocol Server
IG-VirtEnv	Integration Guide for Virtualization Environments
IG-VSS	Integration Guide for Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service
Install	Installation and Licensing Guide
MO-GS	Media Operations Getting Started Guide
MO-PA	Media Operations Product Announcements, Software Notes, and References
MO-UG	Media Operations User Guide
PA	Product Announcements, Software Notes, and References

Abbreviation	Documentation item
Trouble	Troubleshooting Guide
ZDB-Admin	ZDB Administrator's Guide
ZDB-Concept	ZDB Concepts Guide
ZDB-IG	ZDB Integration Guide

## Map

The following table shows where to find information of different kinds. Shaded squares are a good place to look first.

								Integration Guides							ZDB		GRE		MO						
	Help	GS	Concepts	Install	Trouble	DR	PA	MS	O/S	IBM	Var	VSS	VirtEnv	OMU	OMW	Concept	Admin	IG	Exchange	SPS	VMware	GS	UG	PA	CLI
Backup	X	X	X					X	X	X	X	X	X			X	X	X							
CLI																									X
Concepts/ techniques	X		X					X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Disaster recovery	X		X			X																			
Installation/ upgrade	X	X		X			X							X	X							X	X		
Instant recovery	X		X													X	X	X							
Licensing	X			X			X																X		
Limitations	X				X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X				X							X	
New features	X						X																	X	
Planning strategy	X		X													X									
Procedures/ tasks	X			X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X		X		
Recommendations			X				X									X								X	
Requirements				X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							X	X	X	
Restore	X	X	X					X	X	X	X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X			
Supported configurations																X									
Troubleshooting	X			X	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X			

## Integrations

Look in these guides for details of the integrations with the following software applications:

Software application	Guides
HP Network Node Manager (NNM)	IG-Var
HP Operations Manager	IG-OMU, IG-OMW
IBM DB2 UDB	IG-IBM
Informix Server	IG-IBM
Lotus Notes/Domino Server	IG-IBM
Media Operations	MO-UG
Microsoft Exchange Server	IG-MS, ZDB IG, GRE-Exchange

Software application	Guides
Microsoft Hyper-V	IG-VirtEnv
Microsoft SharePoint Server	IG-MS, ZDB-IG, GRE-SPS
Microsoft SQL Server	IG-MS, ZDB-IG
Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS)	IG-VSS
Network Data Management Protocol (NDMP) Server	IG-Var
Oracle Server	IG-O/S, ZDB-IG
SAP HANA Appliance	IG-O/S
SAP MaxDB	IG-O/S
SAP R/3	IG-O/S, ZDB-IG
Sybase Server	IG-Var
VMware vCloud Director	IG-VirtEnv
VMware vSphere	IG-VirtEnv, GRE-VMware

Look in these guides for details of the integrations with the following families of disk array systems:

Disk array family	Guides
EMC Symmetrix	all ZDB
HP P4000 SAN Solutions	ZDB-Concept, ZDB-Admin, IG-VSS
HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family	all ZDB, IG-VSS
HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family	all ZDB, IG-VSS
HP P10000 Storage Systems	ZDB-Concept, ZDB-Admin, IG-VSS

## Document conventions and symbols

**Table 2 Document conventions**

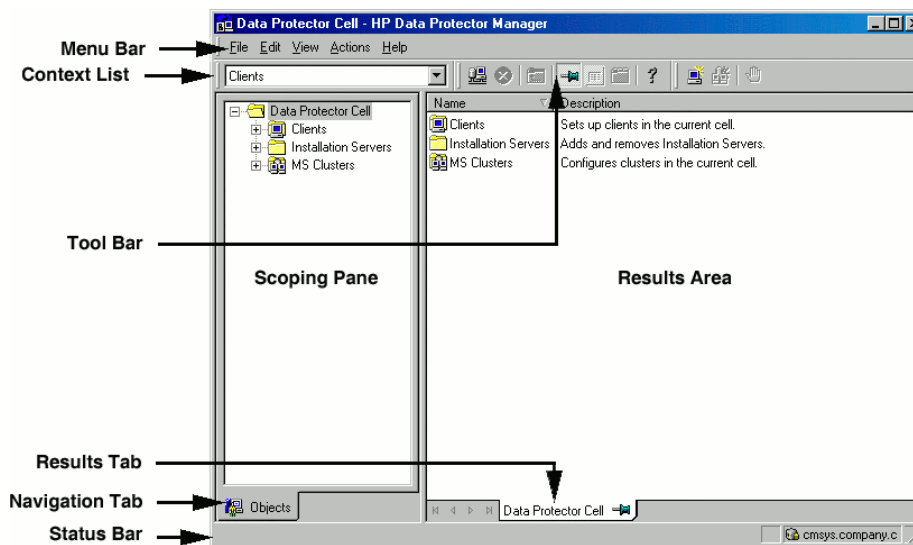
Convention	Element
Blue text: “ <a href="#">Document conventions</a> ” (page 13)	Cross-reference links and e-mail addresses
Blue, underlined text: <a href="http://www.hp.com">http://www.hp.com</a>	Website addresses
<b>Bold</b> text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Keys that are pressed</li> <li>Text typed into a GUI element, such as a box</li> <li>GUI elements that are clicked or selected, such as menu and list items, buttons, tabs, and check boxes</li> </ul>
<i>Italic</i> text	Text emphasis
Monospace text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>File and directory names</li> <li>System output</li> <li>Code</li> <li>Commands, their arguments, and argument values</li> </ul>
<i>Monospace, italic</i> text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Code variables</li> <li>Command variables</li> </ul>
<b>Monospace, bold</b> text	Emphasized monospace text

- 
- CAUTION:** Indicates that failure to follow directions could result in damage to equipment or data.
- 
- IMPORTANT:** Provides clarifying information or specific instructions.
- 
- NOTE:** Provides additional information.
- 
- TIP:** Provides helpful hints and shortcuts.
- 

## Data Protector graphical user interface

Data Protector provides a cross-platform (Windows and UNIX) graphical user interface. You can use the original Data Protector GUI (Windows only) or the Data Protector Java GUI. For information about the Data Protector graphical user interface, see the *HP Data Protector Help*.

**Figure 1 Data Protector graphical user interface**



## General information

General information about Data Protector can be found at <http://www.hp.com/go/dataprotector>.

## HP technical support

For worldwide technical support information, see the HP support website:

<http://www.hp.com/support>

Before contacting HP, collect the following information:

- Product model names and numbers
- Technical support registration number (if applicable)
- Product serial numbers
- Error messages
- Operating system type and revision level
- Detailed questions

## Subscription service

HP recommends that you register your product at the Subscriber's Choice for Business website:

<http://www.hp.com/go/e-updates>

After registering, you will receive e-mail notification of product enhancements, new driver versions, firmware updates, and other product resources.

## HP websites

For additional information, see the following HP websites:

- <http://www.hp.com>
- <http://www.hp.com/go/software>
- <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>
- <http://www.hp.com/support/downloads>

---

# 1 Introduction

## Overview

This chapter provides a general overview of the disaster recovery process, explains the basic terms used in the Disaster Recovery guide and provides an overview of disaster recovery methods.

A **computer disaster** refers to any event that renders a computer system unbootable, whether due to human error, hardware or software failure, virus, natural disaster, and so on. In these cases it is most likely that the boot or system partition of the system is not available and the environment needs to be recovered before the standard restore operation can begin. This includes repartitioning and/or reformatting the boot partition and recovery of the operating system with all the configuration information that defines the environment. *This has to be completed in order to recover other user data.*

**Original system** refers to the system configuration backed up by Data Protector before a computer disaster hit the system.

**Target system** refers to the system after the computer disaster has occurred. The target system is typically in a non-bootable state and the goal of Data Protector disaster recovery is to restore this system to the original system configuration. The difference between the affected and the target system is that the target system has all faulty hardware replaced.

A **boot disk/partition/volume** refers to the disk/partition/volume that contains the files required for the initial step of the boot process, whereas the **system disk/partition/volume** refers to the disk/partition/volume that contains the operating system files.

---

**NOTE:** Microsoft defines the boot partition as the partition that contains the operating system files and the system partition as one that contains the files required for the initial step of the boot process.

---

**Hosting system** is a working Data Protector client used for Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery with Disk Agent installed.

**Auxiliary disk** is a bootable disk that has a minimal operating system with networking and Data Protector Disk Agent installed. It can be carried around and used to boot the target system in Phase 1 of Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery of UNIX clients.

**Disaster recovery operating system (DR OS)** is the operating system environment where the process of disaster recovery is running. It provides Data Protector a basic runtime environment (disk, network, tape and filesystem access). It has to be installed and configured before the Data Protector disaster recovery can be performed.

DR OS can be either temporary or active. **Temporary DR OS** is used exclusively as a host environment for some other operating system restore along with the target operating system configuration data. It is deleted after the target system is restored to the original system configuration.

**Active DR OS** not only hosts the Data Protector disaster recovery process but is also a part of the restored system because it replaces its own configuration data with the original configuration data.

**Critical volumes** are volumes required to boot the system and Data Protector files. Regardless of the operating system, these volumes are:

- boot volume
- system volume
- volume where Data Protector executables are installed
- volume where the IDB resides (Cell Manager only)

---

**NOTE:** If the IDB is located on several volumes then all volumes where the IDB resides are critical.

---



Apart from the critical volumes stated above, CONFIGURATION is also a part of the critical volumes set for Windows and Linux systems.

On Windows, services are backed up as a part of the CONFIGURATION backup. Some items included in the CONFIGURATION can be located on volumes other than system, boot, Data Protector or IDB volumes. In this case these volumes are also part of critical volumes set:

- user profiles volume
- Certificate Server database volume on Windows Server
- Active Directory Service volume on domain controller on Windows Server
- quorum volume on Microsoft Cluster Server.

On Linux, the CONFIGURATION object contains only data structures needed by Data Protector for automatic disaster recovery methods.

**Online recovery** is performed when Cell Manager is accessible. In this case most of Data Protector functionalities are available (Cell Manager runs the session, restore sessions are logged in the IDB, you can monitor the restore progress using GUI, and so on).

**Offline recovery** is performed if the Cell Manager is not accessible (for example, due to network problems, Cell Manager has experienced a disaster, online recovery has failed, and so on). Only standalone and SCSI Library devices can be used for offline recovery. Note that recovery of Cell Manager is always offline.

**Remote recovery** is performed if all Media Agent systems specified in SRD file are accessible. If any of them fails, disaster recovery process fails over to **local** mode. This means that the target system is searched for locally attached devices. If only one device is found, it is automatically used. Otherwise Data Protector prompts you to select the device which will be used for restore. Note that offline OBDR is always local.

Disaster is always serious, however the following factors can exacerbate the situation:

- The system has to be returned to online status as quickly and efficiently as possible.
- Administrators are not familiar with the required steps to perform the disaster recovery procedure.
- The available personnel to perform the recovery may only have fundamental system knowledge.

Disaster recovery is a complex task that involves extensive planning and preparation before execution. You have to have a well-defined, step-by-step process in place to prepare for, and recover from, disastrous situations.

## Disaster recovery process

The **disaster recovery process** consists of 4 phases:

- **Phase 0** (preparation) is the prerequisite for a successful disaster recovery. The planning and preparation must be done *before* a disaster occurs.
- In **Phase 1**, DR OS is installed and configured, which usually includes repartitioning and reformatting of the boot partition, since the boot or system partition of the system are not always available and the environment needs to be recovered before normal restore operations can resume.
- The operating system with all the configuration information that defines the environment with Data Protector (as it was) is restored in **Phase 2**.
- Only after this step is completed, is the restore of applications and user data possible (**Phase 3**).

A well-defined, step-by-step process has to be followed to ensure fast and efficient restore.

## Disaster recovery methods

This section provides a general overview of disaster recovery methods. For a list of supported disaster recovery methods for a particular operating system, see the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

**NOTE:** Each disaster recovery method has limitations you should consider before implementation.

“Overview of disaster recovery methods” (page 18) provides an overview of the Data Protector disaster recovery methods.

**Table 3 Overview of disaster recovery methods**

Phase 0	Phase 1	Phase 2	Phase 3
<b>Manual Disaster Recovery</b>			
Full client backup, IDB backup (Cell Manager only). Update SRD file (Windows only). Collect information on the original system to enable installation and configuration of DR OS.	Install DR OS with network support. Repartition the disk and re-establish the original storage structure.	Execute the <code>drstart</code> command to automatically recover critical volumes. Additional steps are required to perform advanced recovery tasks.	Restore user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.
See “Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery of a Windows system” (page 27) or “Manual disaster recovery of a UNIX Cell Manager” (page 85).			
<b>Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery (DDDR)</b>			
Full client backup, IDB backup (Cell Manager only), create auxiliary disk (UNIX only).	<p><b>Windows systems:</b> Connect a replacement disk to a hosting system.</p> <p><b>UNIX systems:</b> Connect the auxiliary disk to the target system.</p> <p>All systems: repartition the replacement disk and re-establish the original storage structure.</p>	<p><b>Windows systems:</b> Restore critical volumes using DDDR wizard, remove the replacement disk from the hosting system and connect it to the target system.</p> <p><b>UNIX systems:</b> Restore the boot disk of the original system onto the replacement disk, remove the auxiliary boot disk.</p> <p>All systems: restart the system.</p> <p>Additional steps are required to perform advanced recovery tasks.</p>	Restore user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.
See “Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery of a Windows client” (page 32) or “Manual disaster recovery of a UNIX Cell Manager” (page 85).			
<b>Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery (EADR)</b>			
Full client backup, IDB backup (Cell Manager only). Prepare and update SRD. Prepare DR OS image.	Boot the system from the DR CD or USB drive and select the scope of recovery.	Automatic restore of critical volumes. Additional steps are required to perform advanced recovery tasks.	Restore user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.
See “Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery of a Windows system” (page 34) or “Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery of a Linux system” (page 86).			
<b>One Button Disaster Recovery (OBDR)</b>			
Full client backup using OBDR wizard. Prepare and update SRD.	Boot the target system from the OBDR tape and select scope of recovery.	Automatic restore of critical volumes.	Restore user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.
See “One Button Disaster Recovery of a Windows system” (page 47) or “One Button Disaster Recovery of a Linux system” (page 93).			

**Table 3 Overview of disaster recovery methods** *(continued)*

Phase 0	Phase 1	Phase 2	Phase 3
<b>Automated System Recovery (ASR)</b>			
Full client backup, ASR diskettes with an updated SRD file and DP binaries are prepared.	Boot the system from the Windows installation medium and enter the ASR mode. Provide ASR diskette.	Critical volumes are restored. Additional steps to perform advanced recovery tasks are required.	Restore user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.
See <a href="#">“Automated System Recovery”</a> (page 59).			

The following has to be completed before you can proceed to the next phase:

- **Phase 0:**  
A full client backup and the IDB backup (Cell Manager only), must be performed, and enough information must be collected by the administrator from the original system to enable installation and configuration of the DR OS. An auxiliary boot disk should be created for Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery on UNIX.
- **Phase 1:**  
DR OS must be installed and configured and the original storage structure must be re-established (all volumes are ready to be restored). The replacement disk for Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery on UNIX must be made bootable.
- **Phase 2:**  
Critical volumes are restored. Additional steps to perform advanced recovery tasks are required. See [“Advanced recovery tasks”](#) (page 64).
- **Phase 3:**  
Check if application data is restored correctly (for example, databases are consistent).

## Manual disaster recovery method

This is a basic and very flexible disaster recovery method that involves recovering the target system to the original system configuration.

First, you need to install and configure the DR OS. Then use Data Protector to restore data (including the operating system files), replacing the operating system files with the restored operating system files.

With manual recovery, it is important to collect the information regarding the storage structure, which is not kept in flat files (such as partition information, disk mirroring, and striping).

## Disaster recovery using disk delivery

This method is supported on Windows and UNIX clients.

On Windows clients, the disk of the affected system (or the replacement disk for the physically damaged disk) is temporarily connected to a hosting system. After being restored, it can be connected to the faulty system and booted.

On UNIX systems, the auxiliary disk with a minimal operating system, networking, and Data Protector agent installed is used to perform Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery.

This is a fast and simple method to recover clients. On Windows systems, the operating system state is restored automatically as well.



**TIP:** This method is especially useful with hot swap hard disk drives, because you can disconnect a hard disk drive from a system and connect a new one while the power is still on and the system is operating.

See “Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery of a Windows client” (page 32).

## One Button Disaster Recovery (OBDR)

One Button Disaster Recovery (OBDR) is an automated Data Protector recovery method for Windows and Linux clients and Cell Manager, where user intervention is reduced to a minimum.

It collects all relevant operating system environment data automatically at backup time. During a full backup, data required for temporary DR OS setup and configuration is packed in a single large OBDR image file and stored on the backup tape. When a disaster occurs, an OBDR device (a backup device, capable of emulating a CD-ROM) is used to boot the target system directly from the tape that contains the OBDR image file with disaster recovery information.

Data Protector then installs and configures the disaster recovery operating system (DR OS), formats and partitions the disks and finally restores the original operating system with Data Protector as it was at the time of backup.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** You need to prepare a new OBDR boot tape after each hardware, software or configuration change. This also applies to any network configuration changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.
- 

## Automated System Recovery (ASR)

Automated System Recovery (ASR) is an automated system on Windows systems, which reconfigures a disk to its original state (or resizes the partitions if the new disk is larger than the original disk) in the case of a disaster. This includes disk partitioning and logical volume configuration (file formats, drive letter assignments, volume mountpoints, and volume characteristics). ASR thus enables the Data Protector `drstart` command to install the active DR OS that provides Data Protector disk, network, tape and file system access.

Data Protector then recovers the target system to the original system configuration and finally restores all user data.

## Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery (EADR)

Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery (EADR) is an automated Data Protector recovery method for Windows and Linux clients and Cell Manager, where user intervention is reduced to minimum.

The EADR procedure collects all relevant environment data automatically at backup time. During configuration backup, data required for temporary DR OS setup and configuration is packed in a single large **DR OS image file** and stored on the backup tape (and optionally on Cell Manager) for each backed up client in the cell.

In addition to this image file, a Phase 1 startup information (stored in the **PIS** file), required for correct formatting and partitioning of the disk is stored on the Cell Manager. When a disaster occurs, you can use the EADR wizard to restore the DR OS image from the backup medium (if it has not been saved on the Cell Manager during the full backup) and convert it to a **disaster recovery CD ISO image**. You can then burn the CD ISO image on a CD using any burning tool. Alternatively, you can save the DR OS image on a USB drive.

When you boot the target system from the CD or USB drive, Data Protector automatically installs and configures the DR OS, formats and partitions the disks and finally recovers the original system with Data Protector as it was at the time of backup.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new backup and prepare a new DR OS image after each hardware, software or configuration change. This also applies to any network configuration changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.
-

The recovered volumes are:

- the boot partition
- the system partition
- the partitions containing Data Protector

Any remaining partitions can be recovered using the standard Data Protector recovery procedure.

## Data Protector integrations and disaster recovery

Disaster recovery is a very complex process that involves products from several vendors. As such, successful disaster recovery depends on all the vendors involved. Use the information provided here only as a guideline.

Check the instructions of the database/application vendor on how to prepare for disaster recovery.

This is a general procedure on how to recover an application:

1. Perform Disaster Recovery.
2. Install, configure, and initialize the database/application so that data on Data Protector media can be loaded back to the system. Consult database/application vendor documentation for a detailed procedure and steps needed to prepare the database.
3. Ensure that the database/application server has the required Data Protector client software installed and is configured for the database/application. Follow the procedures in the appropriate *HP Data Protector Integration Guide*.
4. Start the restore. When the restore is complete, follow the instructions of the database/application vendor for any additional steps required to bring the database back online.

---

## 2 Planning and preparing for a disaster recovery

### In this chapter

Carefully follow the instructions in this chapter to prepare for a disaster recovery and to ensure fast and efficient restore. Preparation does not depend on the disaster recovery method, however, it does include developing a detailed disaster recovery plan, performing consistent and relevant backups and updating the SRD file on Windows.

This chapter contains the general preparation procedure for disaster recovery for all disaster recovery methods. Additional preparation is required for each particular disaster recovery method. See the corresponding sections for additional preparation steps.

### Planning

Developing a detailed disaster recovery plan has a major impact on the success of a disaster recovery. To deploy disaster recovery in a large environment with many different systems, proceed as follows:

#### 1. Plan

Planning must be prepared by IT administration and should include the following:

- Determine the systems that need to be recovered as well as the time and level of recovery. Critical systems are all systems required for network to function properly (DNS servers, domain controllers, gateways, and so on), Cell Managers and Media Agent clients.
- Determine a recovery method to be used (impacts the required preparations).
- Determine a method to obtain the required information at recovery time, such as the media that holds the IDB, location of updated SRD file and location and labels of the Cell Manager backup media.
- Create a step-by-step detailed checklist to guide you through the process.
- Create and execute a test plan to confirm that the recovery will actually work.

#### 2. Prepare for recovery

Depending on the recovery method to be used, the preparation should include:

##### **UNIX systems:**

- Creation of tools, such as the auxiliary disk with the minimum operating system, network resources, and the Data Protector Disk Agent installed.
- Creation of pre-execution scripts, which collect the storage structure and other client-specific preparations.

##### **Windows and Linux systems:**

- Updating **System Recovery Data (SRD)** and storing it to a safe place. You should restrict access to SRD files due to security reasons.

##### **All systems:**

- Performing regular and consistent backups.

#### 3. Perform recovery procedures

Follow the procedures and checklists you have tested to recover the affected system.

---

**△ CAUTION:** Do not change the default `Inet` listen port on systems that are prepared for disaster recovery. In the opposite case, if such systems are struck by a disaster, the disaster recovery process may fail.

---

## Consistent and relevant backup

In the case of a disaster, the target system should be put back into the state it was at the time of the last valid known backup. Additionally, the system should function as it had functioned just before the last valid backup performance.

---

**NOTE:** On UNIX systems, some daemons or processes are active as soon as the system finishes starting up, for various reasons (the run-level 2). Such an early process may even read the data into memory and write a “dirty flag” into some file while it runs. A backup taken at the standard operating stage (the standard run-level 4) cannot be expected to yield a problem-free restart of such an application. To follow the example, the license server, if started after such a pseudo recovery, will realize that the data read from the file is inconsistent and will refuse to run the service as expected.

On Windows, while the system is up and running, many system files cannot be replaced because the system keeps them locked. For example, the user profiles that are currently being used cannot be restored. The login account has to be changed or the relevant service has to be stopped.

---

Data consistency of an application can be violated depending on what is active on the system when the backup runs, thereby causing re-start and execution issues after recovery.

## Creating a consistent and relevant backup

- Ideally, you would perform a backup with the relevant partition(s) set off-line, which is usually not possible.
- Examine the activity on the system during the backup. Only operating system related processes and database services which are backed up online can remain active during the backup execution.
- None of the low-level (UNIX) or background-level (Windows) application specific services should be running.

What should be included in the consistent and relevant backup depends on the disaster recovery method you plan to use and other system specifics (for example, disaster recovery of Microsoft Cluster). See the sections pertaining to particular disaster recovery methods.

## Encrypted backups

If your backups are encrypted, you must ensure that the encryption keys are safely stored and available when you start a disaster recovery. Without the access to the appropriate encryption key, the disaster recovery procedure aborts.

The encryption keys are stored on the Cell Manager so the disaster recovery client must either be connected to the Cell Manager to get the encryption key or you must provide the encryption key on a removable medium. For details on encryption concepts, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “encryption”.

Two disaster recovery scenarios are possible:

- Recovery of a client where you can establish a connection to the Cell Manager. No additional encryption-related preparations are needed for such a scenario, as Data Protector automatically obtains the encryption keys.
- Disaster recovery of a Cell Manager or standalone client recovery, where you cannot establish a connection to the Cell Manager. You must provide the encryption keys when prompted.

*The keys are not part of the disaster recovery OS image and are exported to the key file. You must manually store the keys to a separate removable media. Ensure that you have always an appropriate copy of the keys for each backup that is prepared for disaster recovery. If the encryption key is not available, disaster recovery is not possible.*



## Updating and editing the System Recovery Data (SRD)

**System Recovery Data (SRD)** is a text file in the Unicode (UTF-16) format that contains information required for the configuration and restore of the Windows or Linux target system. A SRD file is generated when CONFIGURATION backup is performed on a Windows or Linux client and then stored in:

- On a Windows Cell Manager: `Data_Protector_home\Config\Server\dr\srd`
- On a UNIX Cell Manager: `/etc/opt/omni/server/dr/srd/`

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** When IDB is not available, information about objects and media is stored only in SRD file.

---

The SRD filename on the Cell Manager is identical to the hostname of the computer where it was generated - for example `computer.company.com`.

After the CONFIGURATION backup, the SRD contains only system information required for installation of the DR OS. In order to perform a disaster recovery, additional information about backup objects and corresponding media must be added to the SRD. The SRD can be updated only on a Windows or Linux client. The name of the updated SRD file is `recovery.srd`.

There are three different methods possible for updating the SRD file:

- Update SRD File wizard (Windows only)
- `omnisrdupdate` command as a standalone utility
- `omnisrdupdate` command as a backup session post-exec script

### Updating using the SRD update wizard

To update the SRD file on Windows clients, using the Update SRD File wizard, proceed as follows:

1. In the Data Protector Manager switch to the Restore context and then click the **Tasks** Navigation tab.
2. In the Scoping Pane of the Tasks Navigation tab, check the **Disaster Recovery**.
3. In the Results Area, check the **SRD File Update** option button, select the client and click **Next**.
4. For each of the critical objects, select an object version and click **Next**.
5. Type the destination directory where the updated SRD file is to be placed and click **Finish**.

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** Because the SRD file is saved on the Cell Manager system, it is not accessible if the Cell Manager fails. As a result, you need an additional copy of the Cell Manager's SRD which should be stored in a vault. In addition to the Cell Manager, you should save the updated SRD file to several secure locations as a part of the disaster recovery preparation policy. See ["Preparation" \(page 33\)](#).

---

### Updating using `omnisrdupdate`

It is also possible to update the SRD file using the `omnisrdupdate` command as a standalone command.

`omnisrdupdate` requires a `session_ID` to update an existing SRD file with backup object information belonging to the given session. Using this value, `omnisrdupdate` will update the SRD file with the backup object information which belongs to the passed `session_ID` value. After the SRD is updated it will be saved back on the Cell Manager.

This procedure will only succeed if all critical backup objects (as specified in the SRD file) were actually backed up during the specified session. To view which objects are considered as critical for the SRD update, open the SRD file in a text editor and find the objects section. All critical objects for the SRD update are listed there. Note that the database is represented as `"/`.



Here is an example of an objects section of the SRD file, which contains information about both critical and non-critical volumes:

```
-section objects
-objcount 7
-object /C -objtype 7 -objpurpose 4363
-endobject /C
-object /CONFIGURATION -objtype 7 -objpurpose 4
-endobject /CONFIGURATION
-object / -objtype 7 -objpurpose 32
-endobject /
-object /F -objtype 7 -objpurpose 64
-endobject /F
-object /G -objtype 7 -objpurpose 64
-endobject /G
-object /D -objtype 7 -objpurpose 64
-endobject /D
-object /P -objtype 7 -objpurpose 64
-endobject /P
-endsection objects
```

In this case, there are 3 critical objects: /C, / (database) and /CONFIGURATION, and 4 non-critical objects: /F, /G, /D, and /P.



**TIP:** To obtain the session ID, execute the `omnidb` command with the option `-session`. To obtain the latest session ID, type `omnidb -session -latest` at the command prompt.

The updated SRD file should be kept in a safe place so that it is not lost in the case of disaster. To locate where the updated SRD file will be saved, use the `-location` option with the `omnisrdupdate` command. There can be more than one `-location` parameters specified (including network shares on which you have write permission), each of which will receive an updated copy of the SRD file. See [“Preparation” \(page 33\)](#).

To determine for which hostname the SRD file from the Cell Manager should be updated, use the option `-host` with the command `omnisrdupdate`. If you don't specify the hostname, the local host is assumed. SRD file on the Cell Manager is not updated.

### Example

To update the SRD file with the backup object information which belongs to a session 2011/05/02-5 for the client with the hostname `computer.company.com` and to store an updated copy of the SRD file on the floppy disk and in the `SRDfiles` share on `computer` with the hostname `computer2`, type

```
omnisrdupdate -session 2011/05/02-5 -host computer.company.com -location
a: -location \\computer2\SRDfiles
```

Make sure that you have the write permission on that share.

## Updating using a post-exec script

Another method to update the SRD is using the `omnisrdupdate` command as a backup post-exec script. To do so, either modify an existing backup specification or create a new one. Perform the following steps to modify a backup specification so that the SRD file is updated with information about backed up objects when the backup session stops:

1. In the Backup context, expand the Backup Specifications item and then Filesystem.
2. Select the backup specification that you would like to modify (it must include all backup objects marked as critical in the SRD file, otherwise the update will fail. It is recommended to perform the client backup with disk discovery) and click **Options** in the Results Area.
3. Click the **Advanced** button under the Backup Specification Options.
4. Type `omnisrdupdate` in the post-exec text box.

5. In the On client drop down list, select the client on which this post-exec script will be executed and confirm with **OK**. This should be the client that was marked for backup on the source page.

When `omnisrdupdate` command is executed as a post-exec utility, the session ID is obtained automatically from the environment and the user is not required to specify the session ID.

All other options can be specified the same way as with the standalone utility (`-location path`, `-host name`).

## Editing the SRD file

It is possible, that the information about backup devices or media stored in the SRD file is out of date at the time disaster recovery is being performed. In this case edit the SRD file to replace the incorrect information with the relevant information before performing the disaster recovery. See [“Recovery using an edited SRD file” \(page 71\)](#).



---

**IMPORTANT:** You should restrict access to the SRD files due to security reasons.

---

# 3 Disaster recovery for Windows systems

## Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery of a Windows system

The following sections explain how to prepare and execute an Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery on Windows systems. For details on supported operating systems, see the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

### Overview

The general procedure for Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery of a Windows client is:

#### 1. Phase 0

- a. Perform a full client backup and an IDB backup (Cell Manager only).
- b. Update the SRD file. Collect information on the original system to enable installation and configuration of the DR OS.

#### 2. Phase 1

- a. Replace the faulty hardware.
- b. Reinstall the operating system. (Create and format the necessary partitions).
- c. Reinstall service packs.
- d. Manually re-partition the disk and re-establish the storage structure with original drive letter assignments.



**TIP:** You can combine Phase 1 of Manual Disaster Recovery with automated deployment tools.

#### 3. Phase 2

- a. Execute the Data Protector `drstart` command that will install the DR OS and start the restore of critical volumes.
- b. The system must be restarted after the `drstart` command finishes.
- c. Additional steps are required if you are recovering a Cell Manager or performing advanced recovery tasks. For more information, see “Advanced recovery tasks” (page 64).

#### 4. Phase 3

- a. Use the Data Protector standard restore procedure to restore user and application data.

### Requirements

- The partitions have to be the same size or larger than the partitions on the failed disk. This way the information stored on the failed disk can be restored to the new one. Also, the type of filesystem and compression attributes of the volumes must match (FAT, NTFS).
- The hardware configuration of the target system must be the same as of the original system. This includes SCSI BIOS settings (sector remapping).
- If there were volume mounts points created before disaster, these mount points must be recreated before starting the disaster recovery procedure as volume mount points are not restored automatically. If the mount points are not recreated, data might be restored to wrong location.

## Limitation

- Internet Information Server (IIS) Database, Terminal Services Database and Certificate Server Database are not restored automatically during Phase 2. They can be restored on the target system using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

## Preparation

To prepare for a successful disaster recovery, you should follow the instructions related to the general preparation procedure together with the specific method requirements. Advance preparation is essential to perform the disaster recovery fast and efficiently. You should also give special attention to the disaster recovery preparation of the Cell Manager and Microsoft Cluster Server.



**CAUTION:** It is too late to prepare for a disaster recovery once a disaster has occurred.

Before completing the steps listed in this section, see also [“Planning” \(page 22\)](#) for the general preparation procedure for all disaster recovery methods. To recover from a disaster quickly and efficiently, consider the following steps and prepare your environment accordingly:

1. You need a Windows bootable installation CD-ROM to enable your system to start from the CD-ROM. If you do not have a bootable CD-ROM, use the standard procedure for starting the system from diskettes.
2. Ensure that you have drivers for the system you want to recover. You may need to install some drivers, such as network, HBA and SCSI drivers during Windows Setup.
3. To recover the affected system, you need the following information about the system before the disaster (stored also in the SRD file):
  - If DHCP was not used before the disaster, the TCP/IP properties (IP address, default gateway, subnet mask and DNS order (IPv4), subnet prefix length, preferred and alternate DNS server (IPv6))
  - Client properties (hostname, domain)
4. Ensure that the following is true:
  - You should have a valid full client backup image. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “backup, Windows specific” and “backup, configuration”.
  - You should have a SRD file updated with information about backed up objects in the chosen successful backup session. See [“Updating and editing the System Recovery Data \(SRD\)” \(page 24\)](#).
  - In the case of a Cell Manager recovery, you need a valid IDB backup image. For more information on how to configure and perform an IDB backup, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “IDB, configuration”.
  - Consistent backup image for a Microsoft Cluster Server includes:
    - all nodes
    - administrative virtual server (defined by the administrator)
    - if Data Protector is configured as a cluster aware application, Cell Manager virtual server and IDB.For details, see [“Restoring the Microsoft Cluster Server specifics” \(page 65\)](#).
  - The disk with the boot partition requires free disk space that is needed for the Data Protector disaster recovery installation (15 MB) and active DR OS installation. Additionally, you also need as much free disk space, as required for the restore of the original system.
5. For Windows systems running on a 32-bit platform, copy the contents of *Data\_Protector\_program\_data\Depot\DRSetup* (Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012), *Data\_Protector\_home\Depot\DRSetup* (other Windows systems), or *\i386\tools\DRSetup* (Data Protector installation medium) onto three floppy

disks (**drsetup diskettes**). For Windows systems running on the AMD64/Intel EM64T platform, copy the contents of *Data\_Protector\_program\_data\Depot\DRSetupx8664* (Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012), *Data\_Protector\_home\Depot\DRSetupx8664* (other Windows systems), or *\i386\tools\DRSetupx8664* (Data Protector installation medium) onto four floppy disks. For Windows systems running on the Itanium platform, copy the contents of *Data\_Protector\_program\_data\Depot\DRSetup64* (Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012), *Data\_Protector\_home\Depot\DRSetup64* (other Windows systems), or *\i386\tools\DRSetup64* (Data Protector installation medium) onto six floppy disks. In case of a disaster, save the updated SRD file of the affected system to the first floppy disk (disk1). Only one set of drsetup diskettes is required per site for all Windows systems, but you must always copy an updated SRD file of the affected client on the first floppy disk. If multiple SRD files are found, Data Protector will ask you to select the appropriate version.

6. In order to re-create disk partitions to their initial state prior to the disaster, record the following information for each partition (it will be needed during the recovery process):
  - partitions length and order
  - drive letters assigned to the partitions
  - partitions filesystem type

This information is stored in the SRD file. The `-type` option in the diskinfo section of the SRD file shows the partition filesystem type for a particular partition:

**Table 4 How to determine the filesystem type from the SRD File**

Type number	Filesystem
1	Fat12
4 and 6	Fat32
5 and 15	Extended partition
7	NTFS
11 and 12	Fat32
18	EISA
66	LDM partition

The table on the next page is an example of the preparation for the disaster recovery. Note that data in the table belongs to a specific system and cannot be used on any other system. For an empty template which can be used when preparing for the Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery, see [“Windows manual disaster recovery preparation template”](#) (page 115).

**Table 5 Example of the AMDR preparation template**

Client properties	computer name	ANDES
	hostname	andes.company.com
Drivers	hpn.sys, hpncin.dll	
Windows Service Pack	Windows Vista	
TCP/IP properties for IPv4	IP address	3.55.61.61
	default gateway	10.17.250.250
	subnet mask	255.255.0.0
	DNS order	11.17.3.108, 11.17.100.100

**Table 5 Example of the AMDR preparation template** *(continued)*

TCP/IP properties for IPv6	IP address	tb43:1234:5678:abcd::9:1000
	subnet prefix length	64
	default gateway	tb43:1234:5678:abcd::9:1004
	preferred DNS server	tb43:1234:5678:abcd::9:1004
	alternate DNS server	tb43:1234:5678:abcd::9:1005
Medium label / Barcode number		"andes - disaster recovery" / [000577]
Partition information and order	1st disk label	
	1st partition length	31 MB
	1st drive letter	
	1st filesystem	EISA
	2nd disk label	BOOT
	2nd partition length	1419 MB
	2nd drive letter	C:
	2nd filesystem	NTFS/HPFS
	3rd disk label	
	3rd partition length	
	3rd drive letter	
	3rd filesystem	

## Recovery

Follow the procedure below to recover a Windows system using Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery. If you are performing advanced recovery tasks (such as disaster recovery of a Cell Manager or IIS), see also [“Advanced recovery tasks”](#) (page 64).

1. Install the Windows system from the CD-ROM and install additional drivers if needed. The Windows operating system has to be installed on the same partition as prior to the disaster. Do not install the Internet Information Server (IIS) during the installation of the system. For more details, see [“Restoring Internet Information Server \(IIS\) specifics”](#) (page 70).

① **IMPORTANT:** If Windows has been installed using the Windows unattended setup, use the same script now to install Windows to ensure that the %SystemRoot% and %SystemDrive%\Documents and Settings folders are installed to the same position.

2. When the Windows Partition Setup screen appears, proceed as follows:
  - If a vendor-specific partition (for example, EISA Utility Partition) existed on the system before the disaster, create (if it does not exist due to the ) and format a “dummy” FAT partition using the EUP information gathered from the SRD file. The EUP will be later on recovered to the space occupied by the “dummy” partition. Create and format a boot partition immediately after the “dummy” partition. For details, see [“Preparation”](#) (page 33).
  - If an EUP did not exist on the system before the disaster, create (if the boot partition does not exist) and format the boot partition as it existed on the disk before the disaster. For details, see [“Preparation”](#) (page 33).

Install Windows into its original location, that is, the same drive letter and directory as in the original system before the disaster. This information is stored in the SRD file.

---

**NOTE:** During the installation, do not add the system to the previous location where the Windows domain resided, but add the system to a workgroup instead.

---

3. Install TCP/IP protocol. If DHCP was not used before the disaster, configure the TCP/IP protocol as prior to the disaster by providing the following information: hostname of the affected client, its IP address, default gateway, subnet mask and DNS server. Make sure that the field labeled `Primary DNS suffix of this computer` contains your domain name.

---

**NOTE:** By default, Windows install the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) during the Windows setup.

---

4. Create a new temporary disaster recovery account in the Windows Administrators group and add it to the Data Protector admin group on the Cell Manager. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "adding Data Protector users".

The account must not have existed on the system before the disaster. The temporary *Windows* account will be removed at a later time during this procedure.

5. Log off and log in to the system using the newly created account.
6. If the information in the SRD file is not up to date (for example, because you changed the backup device after the disaster) and you are performing an offline recovery, edit the SRD file before continuing with this procedure. See ["Recovery using an edited SRD file"](#) (page 71).
7. Run the `drstart` command from the `Data_Protector_home\Depot\drsetup\Disk1` (Windows Cell Manager) or `\i386\tools\drsetup\Disk1` (the Data Protector installation medium) directories. If you have prepared the `drsetup` diskettes (see ["Preparation"](#) (page 28)), you can also execute the `drstart` command from the first diskette.
8. `drstart` first scans the current working directory, floppy disk drives, and CD-ROM drives for the location of disaster recovery setup files (`Dr1.cab` and `omnicab.ini`). If the required files are found, the `drstart` utility installs the disaster recovery files in the `%SystemRoot%\system32\OB2DR` directory. Otherwise enter their path in the DR Installation Source text box or browse for the files.
9. If the `recovery.srd` file is saved in the same directory as `dr1.cab` and `omnicab.ini` files, `drstart` copies `recovery.srd` file to the `%SystemRoot%\system32\OB2DR\bin` directory and the `omnidr` utility is started automatically. Otherwise, enter the location of SRD file (`recovery.srd`) in the SRD Path field or browse for the file. Click Next.

If multiple SRD files are found on the floppy disk, Data Protector will ask you to select an appropriate version of the SRD file.

After `omnidr` successfully finishes, all critical objects required for a proper boot of the system are restored.

10. Remove the temporary *Data Protector* user account (added in [Step 4](#)) from the Data Protector admin group on the Cell Manager, unless it existed on the Cell Manager before the disaster recovery.
11. Restart the system, log on, and verify that the restored applications are running.
12. Additional steps are required if you are recovering a Cell Manager or performing advanced recovery tasks (such as restoring MSCS or IIS, editing the `kb.cfg` and SRD files). For more information, see ["Restoring the Data Protector Cell Manager specifics"](#) (page 69) and ["Advanced recovery tasks"](#) (page 64).
13. Use Data Protector to restore user and application data.

The temporary DR OS will be deleted after the first login, except in the following cases:

- You have interrupted the Disaster Recovery wizard during the 10 seconds pause after it has found the DR installation and SRD file on the backup medium, and have selected the **Debugs** option.
- You have manually started the `omnidr` command with the `-no_reset` or `-debug` option.
- Disaster recovery fails.

## Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery of a Windows client

To perform the Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, use a working Data Protector client (Data Protector disaster recovery host) to create the new disk while connected to this client. The administrator has to ensure before the disaster that enough data is collected to correctly format and partition the disk. However, Data Protector automatically stores the relevant information as part of the configuration backup.

The recovered partitions are:

- the boot partition
- the system partition
- the partitions containing Data Protector

Any remaining partitions can be recovered by using the standard Data Protector recovery procedure.

For details on supported operating systems, see the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.



---

**TIP:** This method is especially useful with hot swap hard disk drives, because you can disconnect a hard disk drive from a system and connect a new one while the power is still on and the system is operating.

---

## Overview

The general steps using the Disk Delivery method for a Windows client are:

- 1. Phase 0**
  - a. Perform a full client backup and an IDB backup (Cell Manager only).
  - b. Gather the necessary information about each partition.
- 2. Phase 1**
  - a. Connect the replacement disk to a hosting system.
  - b. Manually re-partition the replacement disk and re-establish the storage structure.
- 3. Phase 2**



- a. Use the Data Protector Disk Delivery wizard to restore the critical disks of the original system onto the replacement disk.
- b. Shut down the hosting system, remove the replacement disk and connect it to the target system. You do not need to shut down the system if you are using a hot-swappable hard disk drive.
- c. Restart the target system from the replaced disk.

#### 4. Phase 3

- a. Use the Data Protector standard restore procedure to restore user and application data.

## Requirements

- The partitions have to be the same size or larger than the partitions on the failed disk. This way the information stored on the failed disk can be restored to the new one. Also, the type of filesystem format has to match (FAT, NTFS).
- The system on which the disk is created and the system in which the disk is used have to use the same sector mapping/addressing (SCSI BIOS enabled/disabled; EIDE: both systems have to use the same addressing mode: LBA, ECHS, CHS).

## Limitations

- Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery is not supported for Microsoft Cluster Server.
- RAID is not supported. This includes software RAIDs (fault-tolerant volumes and dynamic disks).
- Internet Information Server (IIS) Database, Terminal Services Database and Certificate Server Database are not restored automatically during Phase 2. They can be restored on the target system using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

## Preparation

Complete a few steps in order to prepare for disaster recovery. Before completing the steps listed in this section, see also [“Planning” \(page 22\)](#) for the general preparation procedure for all disaster recovery methods.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Prepare for disaster recovery *before* a disaster occurs.
- 

In order to recover from a disaster quickly, efficiently and effectively, you need the following:

- The last valid known full backup of the client that you want to recover.
- A new hard disk to replace your affected disk.
- A Data Protector hosting system, which has to be of the same operating system as the affected client and must have the same hardware I/O path required to connect the new disk.

In order to re-create disk partitions to their initial state prior to the disaster, record the following information for each partition (it will be needed during the recovery process):

- partitions length and order
- drive letters assigned to the partitions
- partitions filesystem type

You can see [“Example of the AMDR preparation template” \(page 29\)](#) as an example of the preparation for the Disk Delivery disaster recovery. For an empty template which can be used when preparing for the Disaster Recovery, see [“Windows manual disaster recovery preparation template” \(page 115\)](#).

## Recovery

This section provides the procedure for recovering your Windows client using the Disk Delivery method. See also “[Advanced recovery tasks](#)” (page 64).

With the Disk Delivery method on Windows, use a Data Protector disaster recovery host (DR host) to restore the last valid known full backup of your affected disk to a new hard disk connected to the client. Then replace your affected disk on the faulty system with this new hard disk.

The actual Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery procedure consists of the following steps:

1. Connect the new disk to a DR host.
  2. Restart the DR host to recognize the new disk.
  3. Use Data Protector GUI on disaster recovery host and switch to the Restore context and click the Tasks tab. Select the **Disaster Recovery** item in the Scoping Pane, select the client from the drop down list and check the **Disaster recovery with disk delivery** in the Results Area.
  4. For each of the critical objects, select an object version that will be restored and click **Next**.
  5. If partitioning has not already been done, partition the new disk using the Disk Administrator. Use the partition information you have gathered as part of the preparation for Disk Delivery disaster recovery.
  6. When partitioning the system, assign partitions in the same order as prior to the time that the full backup was performed. This simplifies drive letter reassignment after the restore and prevents a possibility of failure at system restart because of an inappropriate path to the system partition in the `boot.ini` file.
- 
- ① **IMPORTANT:** Assign drive letters for Windows mountpoints. In this case you must have enough unassigned drive letter available in order to be able to assign a drive letter for each mount point.
- 
7. Perform all necessary drive letter mappings by right clicking on the original drive letter. This is necessary because drive letters on hosting and original system can be different.
  8. Press **Finish**.
  9. Remove the new disk from the DR host, and then connect it to the target system.
  10. Power the target system on.
  11. Use the standard Data Protector restore procedure to restore user and application data. This completes the recovery of the client.

Disk Delivery can also be a valuable method in case one of disks in a multi boot system has been struck by a disaster, and the user can still boot at least one configuration.

---

**NOTE:** Data Protector does not restore volume-compression flag after recovery. All files, that were compressed at backup time, will be restored as compressed but you will have to manually set volume compression if you want any new files created to be compressed as well.

---

## Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery of a Windows system

Data Protector offers an enhanced disaster recovery procedure for Windows Data Protector Cell Manager and clients. For details on supported operating systems, see the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

EADR collects all relevant environment data automatically at backup time. During a full backup, data required for the temporary DR OS setup and configuration is packed in a single large **DR image file (recovery set)** and stored on the backup tape (and optionally on the Cell Manager) for each backed up client in the cell.

In addition to this image file, a **Phase 1 Startup file (P1S file)**, required for correct formatting and partitioning of the disk is stored on a backup medium and on the Cell Manager. When a disaster occurs, the Disaster Recovery Wizard is used to restore the DR image (recovery set) from the backup medium (if it has not been saved on the Cell Manager during the full backup). You can either

convert it into a **disaster recovery CD ISO image**, save it on a bootable USB drive, or create a bootable network image. The CD ISO image can be recorded on a CD using any CD recording tool and used to boot the target system.

Once the DR OS image is booted, Data Protector automatically formats and partitions the disks, and finally recovers the original system with Data Protector as it was at the time of backup.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** HP recommends to restrict access to backup media, DR images, SRD files and disaster recovery CDs and USB drives storing DR OS data.
- 

## Overview

The general steps using the Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery method for a Windows client are:

### 1. Phase 0

- a. Perform a full backup of the entire system (client backup).
- b. Use the Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery Wizard to prepare a DR OS image from the DR image file (recovery set) of the affected system and record it on a CD. On Windows Vista and later releases, you can create a bootable network image or a bootable USB drive with the DR OS image instead of a disaster recovery CD. If the DR image (recovery set) has not been saved on the Cell Manager during the full backup, the Disaster Recovery Wizard will restore it from the backup medium.

- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** You need to perform a new backup and prepare a new DR OS image after each hardware, software, or configuration change. This also applies to any network changes, such as a change of IP address or DNS server.
- 

- c. If the full client backup was encrypted, store the encryption key on a removable medium so that it is available for disaster recovery. You will need the key for a Cell Manager recovery or if the connection to the Cell Manager cannot be established.

### 2. Phase 1

- a. Replace the faulty hardware.
- b. Start the target system from the disaster recovery CD, USB drive, or through the network and select the scope of recovery. This is a completely unattended recovery.

- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Windows Server 2003: If you are recovering a domain controller, before the Disaster Recovery Wizard is launched, a standard Windows logon dialog box prompts you to enter the username (Administrator) and password of the Directory Services Restore Mode administrator account.
- 

### 3. Phase 2

- a. Depending on the recovery scope you select, the selected volumes are automatically restored. Critical volumes (the boot partition and the operating system) are always restored.

### 4. Phase 3

- a. Use the standard Data Protector restore procedure to restore user and application data.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Prepare a disaster recovery CD, a bootable USB drive, or a network bootable image with the DR image (recovery set) in advance for any critical systems that must be restored first (especially DNS servers, Cell Managers, Media Agent clients, file servers, and so on.).

Prepare removable media containing encryption keys in advance for Cell Manager recovery.

---

The following sections explain the limitations, preparation, and recovery that pertains to EADR of the Windows clients. See also [“Advanced recovery tasks” \(page 64\)](#).

## Prerequisites

Before selecting this method of disaster recovery, consider the following requirements and limitations:

- The Data Protector Automatic Disaster Recovery component must be installed on systems for which you want to enable recovery using this method and on systems where the DR OS image will be prepared. For details, see the *HP Data Protector Installation and Licensing Guide*.
- The hardware configuration of the target system must be the same as of the original system. This includes SCSI BIOS settings (sector remapping).
- The new disk have to be the same size or bigger than the affected disk. If it is larger than the original disk, the difference will remain unallocated.
- The replacement disks have to be attached to the same host bus adapter on the same bus.
- On Windows XP and Windows Server 2003 systems, the boot partition (on which the DR OS is installed) must be larger than 200 MB or disaster recovery will fail. If you enabled the Compress drive option to save disk space option on the original partition, you must have 400 MB free.
- On Windows Vista and later releases, at least one volume must be an NTFS volume.
- A backup of all necessary data for disaster recovery may require a significant amount of free space. While normally 500 MB is enough, up to 1 GB may be required depending on the operating system.
- During the DR OS image creation, the partition on which Data Protector is installed should have at least 500 MB of temporary free space. This space is required to create a temporary image.
- On Windows Server 2003 systems, all drivers required for boot must be installed under `%SystemRoot%` folder. If not, they must be specified in the file `kb.cfg`. See [“Editing the kb.cfg file” \(page 71\)](#).
- For a remote restore, the network must be available when you boot DR OS image.
- In a cluster environment, a cluster node can be successfully backed up if the bus address enumeration on each cluster node is the same. This means that you need:
  - An equal cluster node motherboard hardware
  - The same OS version on both nodes (service packs and updates)
  - The same number and type of bus controllers
  - Bus controllers must be inserted in the same PCI motherboard slots.
- On Windows Systems 2003, the operating system should be activated at the time of the backup. Otherwise, when the activation period expires, disaster recovery fails.
- To create a DR OS image for Windows Vista and later releases, you must install the appropriate version of Windows Automated Installation Kit (WAIK) or the Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) on the system on which you will create the image:

### **Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008:**

Automated Installation Kit (AIK) for Windows Vista SP1 and Windows Server 2008

### **Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2:**

- Windows Automated Installation Kit (AIK) for Windows 7
- Windows Automated Installation Kit (AIK) Supplement for Windows 7 SP1 (optional, for Microsoft Windows 7 SP1 and Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1)

## **Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:**

- Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) for Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012.  
You need the following components:
  - Deployment Tools
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE)
- For a disaster recovery from a bootable USB device, make sure that:
  - the size of the USB storage device is at least 1 GB.
  - the target system supports booting from the USB device. Older systems may require a BIOS update or might not be able to boot from an USB storage device at all.
- To create a bootable network image for Windows Vista and later releases, the following requirements must be met:
  - On the target system, the network adapter is enabled to communicate through the PXE protocol. The BIOS of this system should be compliant with the PXE protocol.
  - Windows Deployment Services (WDS) server is installed and configured on the Windows Server 2008 and later Windows Server releases. The WDS server must be either a member of an Active Directory domain or a domain controller for an Active Directory domain.
  - A DNS server and a DHCP server with an active scope are running in the network.
- To back up the IIS configuration object on Windows Vista and later releases, install the IIS 6 Metabase Compatibility package.

## **Limitations**

- Dynamic disks are not supported (including mirror set upgraded from Windows NT).
- Only vendor specific partitions of the type 0x12 (including EISA) and 0xFE are supported for Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery.
- Multiboot systems that do not use Microsoft's boot loader are not supported.
- Disaster recovery ISO images cannot be created on systems where Data Protector is installed on FAT/FAT32 partitions. You need at least one client in the cell where Data Protector is installed on an NTFS volume to be able to create disaster recovery images.
- You can create a bootable USB drive only on Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008 R2 systems (on all supported platforms), Windows Server 2008 systems (Itanium platform) and Windows Server 2012 systems.
- When you perform disaster recovery of a system that does not support booting from the USB device, no USB device can be connected to this system.
- Recovery of a SAN boot configuration is not supported.
- On Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, you can use only a CD/DVD DR OS image.
- On Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, a console interface is available instead of the HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery GUI.
- On Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, recovery of a configuration with Network Teaming adapters is not supported.
- On Windows Vista and later releases, originally encrypted folders can only be restored as unencrypted.

- Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012 Storage Spaces are not supported.
- Internet Information Server (IIS), Terminal Services Database and Certificate Server Database are not restored automatically during Phase 2. They can be restored on the target system using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

## Preparation

Before completing the steps listed in this section, see also [“Planning” \(page 22\)](#) for the general preparation procedure for all disaster recovery methods. See also [“Advanced recovery tasks” \(page 64\)](#).

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** Prepare for disaster recovery *before* a disaster occurs.

---

## Client backup

Perform a full backup of the client system (including the CONFIGURATION object). For a full client backup, you can select one the following, when creating a backup specification:

- the whole client system
- For a Data Protector Cell Manager system, the IDB and CONFIGURATION objects, as well as all individual volumes that are mounted on the client system

See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “backup, Windows specific” and “backup, configuration”.

## Considerations

### **Windows Vista and later releases:**

- Make sure that you back up the system volume.
- You can back up volumes using disk image backup that uses a corresponding VSS writer. This type of backup ensures the volume being backed up remains unlocked during the backup session and can be accessed by other applications. The CONFIGURATION object as well as the volumes that are either not mounted or mounted to NTFS folders must still be backed up as filesystem backup objects.

### **Windows Server 2012:**

- Use disk image backup to back up volumes in the following cases:
  - Deduplicated volumes  
During a filesystem restore, the volume is rehydrated and you might run of space on the destination volume during recovery. A disk image restore keeps the size of the volume.
  - Volumes with Resilient File System (ReFS)

### **Microsoft Cluster Server:**

- Consistent backup image for a Microsoft Cluster Server includes:
  - All nodes
  - Administrative virtual server (defined by the administrator)
  - If Data Protector is configured as a cluster-aware application, Data Protector client system's virtual server.

The above items should be included in the same backup session.

For details, see [“Restoring the Microsoft Cluster Server specifics” \(page 65\)](#).

- *Cluster Shared Volumes:* Before performing a full backup of the client system, back up the Virtual Hard Disk (VHD) files and CSV configuration data using the Data Protector Virtual

Environment integration first. See the *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for Virtualization Environments*.

Virtual Hard Disks (VHD) must be dismounted to ensure consistency.

- After you performed the backup, merge the P1S files for all nodes in the MSCS, so that P1S file of each node contains information on the shared cluster volumes configuration. For instructions, see [“Merging P1S files of all nodes for EADR”](#) (page 67).

#### **Active Directory on Windows Server 2008 and later Windows Server releases:**

- If the Active Directory size exceeds 512 MB, the backup specification for the client backup needs to be modified: in the source page, expand the CONFIGURATION object, and clear the checkboxes for the ActiveDirectoryService and SYSVOL items.

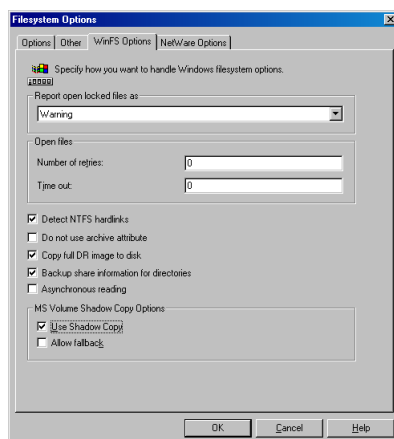
**NOTE:** The Active Directory and SYSVOL will still be backed up as part of the system volume (C:\) backup. By default, they are located in C:\Windows\NTDS and C:\Windows\SYSVOL respectively.

### The DR image (recovery set) file

Data required for temporary DR OS installation and configuration (**DR image (recovery set)**) is packed in a single large file and stored on the backup medium and optionally on the Cell Manager during a full client backup. If you want to save the full disaster recovery image file to the Cell Manager for all clients in the backup specification, perform the following steps:

1. In the Context List, select **Backup**.
2. In the Scoping pane, expand **Backup Specifications** and then **Filesystem**.
3. Select the backup specification you will use for a full filesystem backup of the entire system. If you have not created it yet, do so. For details, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “creating, backup specifications”.
4. In the Results Area, click **Options**.
5. Under Filesystem Options, click **Advanced**.
6. In the Other page, select **Copy full DR image to disk**.
7. **Windows Vista and later releases:** In the WinFS Options page, select **Detect NTFS hardlinks**. Leave the option **Use Shadow Copy** selected and leave the option **Allow Fallback** cleared.

**Figure 2 WinFS options tab**



To copy the DR image (recovery set) files only for particular clients in the backup specification, perform the following steps:

1. In the Context List, select **Backup**.
2. In the Scoping pane, expand **Backup Specifications** and then **Filesystem**.



3. Select the backup specification you will use for a full filesystem backup of the entire system. If you have not created it yet, do so. For details, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "creating, backup specifications".
4. In the Results Area, click **Backup Object Summary**.
5. Select the client for which you would like to store the DR image (recovery set) file onto the Cell Manager and click **Properties**.
6. In the Other page, select **Copy full DR image to disk**.
7. **Windows Vista and later releases:** In the WinFS Options page, select **Detect NTFS hardlinks**. Leave the option **Use Shadow Copy** selected and leave the option **Allow Fallback** cleared.

Saving the full DR image (recovery set) to the Cell Manager is useful if you plan to burn the disaster recovery CD, create a bootable USB drive, or a bootable network image on the Cell Manager, because it is much faster to obtain the DR image (recovery set) from the hard disk than to restore it from a backup medium. The DR image (recovery set) file is saved on the Cell Manager into the default P1S files directory with the name `client_name.img`. To change the default location, specify a new global option `EADRImpagePath = valid_path` (for example, `EADRImpagePath = /home/images` or `EADRImpagePath = C:\temp`). See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "Global Options, modifying".



**TIP:** If you do not have enough free disk space in the destination directory, you can create a mount point (Windows systems) or a link to another volume (UNIX systems).

## The kb.cfg file on Windows XP and Windows Server 2003

The purpose of this file is to provide a flexible method to enable Data Protector to include drivers (and other needed files) in the DR OS image to cover systems with specific boot relevant hardware or application configurations. The default `kb.cfg` file already contains all files necessary for industry standard hardware configurations.

Create and execute a test plan using the default version of the `kb.cfg` file. If the DR OS image does not boot normally or cannot access network, then you may need to modify the file. See "Editing the `kb.cfg` file" (page 71).

## Preparing the encryption keys

For a Cell Manager recovery or an offline client recovery, you must ensure that the encryption keys are available during the disaster recovery by storing them on a removable medium. For a Cell Manager recovery, prepare the removable medium in advance, before the disaster occurs.

The encryption keys are not part of the DR OS image file. During the disaster recovery image creation, the keys are automatically exported to the Cell Manager into the default Data Protector encryption keys directory with the filename `DR-ClientName-keys.csv`, where `ClientName` is the name of the client for which the image is being created.

Ensure that you have the correct encryption key for each backup that is prepared for a disaster recovery.

## The Phase 1 Startup file (P1S)

In addition to the DR image (recovery set) file, a **Phase 1 Startup file (P1S)** is created during full backup. It is saved on backup medium and on the Cell Manager into the default Data Protector P1S files directory with the filename equal to the hostname (for example, `computer.company.com`). It is a Unicode UTF-8 encoded file that contains information on how to format and partition all disks installed in the system, whereas the updated SRD file contains only system information and data about backup objects and corresponding media.

After a disaster occurs, you can use the EADR wizard to merge DR image (recovery set), SRD and P1S files with disaster recovery installation into a **DR OS image**. You can either record it on a CD or DVD (using any CD burning tool that supports the ISO9660 format), write it to a USB drive, or



create a network bootable image. This DR OS image can then be used to perform automated disaster recovery.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** The disaster recovery CD, the bootable USB drive, or the network bootable image for the Cell Manager should be prepared in advance.
- 

Additional steps are required if you are preparing disaster recovery CD of a Microsoft Cluster node. See [“Restoring the Microsoft Cluster Server specifics” \(page 65\)](#).

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** HP recommends to restrict access to backup media, DR images, SRD files, and disaster recovery CDs.
- 

## Preparing a DR OS image for disaster recovery

You can create a DR OS image and record in on to a CD, save the DR OS image to a USB drive, or save it as a bootable network image.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new backup and prepare a new DR OS image after each hardware, software, or configuration change. This also applies to any network configuration changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.
- 

### Preparing a disaster recovery image

To prepare a DR OS image, perform the following steps:

1. In the Context List, select **Restore**.
2. Click the **Tasks** navigation tab and select Disaster Recovery.
3. From the **Host to be recovered** drop down list, select the client you would like to prepare the DR OS image for.
4. Click **Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery** and then **Next**.
5. For each critical object select an appropriate object version and click **Next**.
6. If you have saved the DR image (recovery set) file on the Cell Manager, specify or browse for its location, otherwise click **Restore image file from a backup**. Click **Next**.
7. Select the image format. The following options are available:
  - Create bootable ISO image: a DR ISO image (by default, recovery.iso)
  - Create bootable USB drive: a DR OS image on a bootable USB drive
  - Create bootable network image: a DR OS image that can be used for the network boot (by default, recovery.wim)
8. If you are creating a bootable ISO image or a bootable network image, select the destination directory, where you would like to place the created image.  
If you are creating a bootable USB drive, select the destination USB drive or disk number, where you would like to place the created image.

- 
- ⚠ **CAUTION:** During the creation of the bootable USB drive, all data stored on the drive will be lost.
-

9. **Windows Vista and later releases:**

Specify the WAIK/ADK options:

- Windows Automated Installation Kit (WAIK) or Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) directory

Once you enter the location, Data Protector saves it and uses it as the default selection in the GUI the next time a DR OS image is created. If no directory is specified, Data Protector will use the default WAIK or ADK path.

- Drivers that you want to insert into the DR OS image

You can use this option to add missing drivers to the DR OS image. Add or remove drivers manually by clicking **Add** or **Remove**. To insert the drivers that are part of the Windows client recovery set, click **Inject**. The drivers from the %Drivers% part of the recovery set will be automatically injected into the DR OS image.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** The drivers collected during the backup procedure and stored within the recovery set's %Drivers% directory may not always be appropriate for use in the DR OS. In some cases, Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) specific drivers may need to be injected to ensure that the hardware is functioning properly during the recovery.
- 

10. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard and create the DR OS image.

11. If you are creating a bootable ISO image, record the image on a CD using a CD recording tool that supports the ISO9660 format.

## Recovery

You need the following to successfully perform a disaster recovery on the affected system:

- A new hard disk to replace your affected disk.
- A valid filesystem backup image of the entire system that you want to recover.
- The Data Protector disaster recovery CD, bootable USB drive, or network bootable image created in [“Preparing a DR OS image for disaster recovery”](#) (page 41).
- **Windows Server 2003:** If the affected system is a domain controller, the password of the Directory Services Restore Mode administrator account.

The following is a step-by-step procedure for performing EADR of a Windows system:

1. Unless you are performing an offline disaster recovery, add the account with the following properties to the Data Protector Admin user group on the Cell Manager, depending on the operating system of the target system:

**Windows Vista and later releases:**

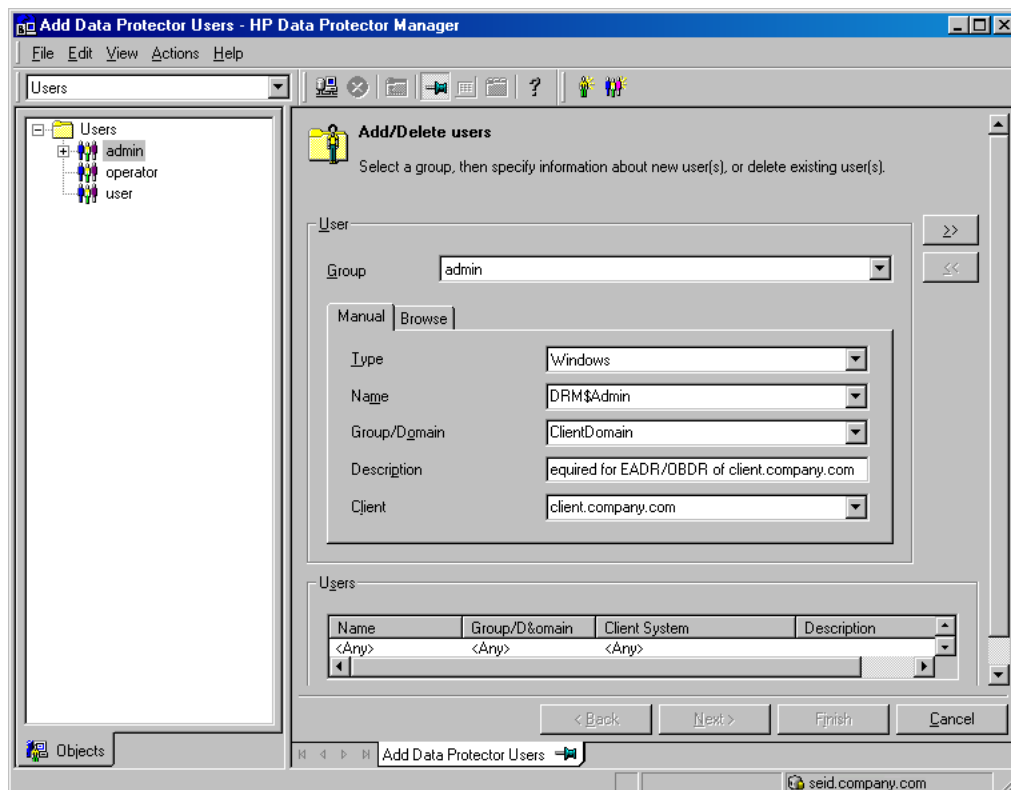
- Type: Windows
  - Name: SYSTEM
  - Group/Domain: NT AUTHORITY
  - Client: the temporary hostname of the system being recovered
- A temporary hostname is assigned to the system by the Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE). You can retrieve it by executing the `hostname` command in the Command Prompt window of the WinPE.

**Windows XP, Windows Server 2003:**

- Type: Windows
- Name: DRM\$ADMIN
- Group/Domain: hostname of the target system
- Client: fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the target system

For more information on adding users, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “adding Data Protector users”.

**Figure 3 Adding a user account**



**NOTE:** If you are using encrypted control communication between the clients in a cell, you must add the client to the Security Exceptions list on the Cell Manager before you start the recovery. Unless you are using a local device, the Media Agent client must be added to the Security Exceptions list on the Cell Manager as well.

2. Boot the client system from the disaster recovery CD, the bootable USB drive, or the bootable network image of the original system.

If you are starting the target system from a CD, ensure that no external USB disks (including USB flash drives) are connected to the system before you start the recovery procedure.

3. **Windows Server 2003:** If you are recovering a domain controller, when the Welcome to Windows dialog box appears, press **Ctrl+Alt+Delete**, enter the password of the Directory Services Restore Mode administrator account, and then click **OK**.

---

**NOTE:** If the screen is locked during a recovery, you can log on with following credentials:

User: DRM\$ADMIN

Password: Dr8\$ad81n\$pa55wD

---

4. Select the scope of the recovery and recovery options. The following steps differ depending on the operating system:

**Windows Vista and later releases:**

- a. The HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery GUI (the Installer Wizard) appears and displays the original system information. Click **Next**.



**TIP:** There are some keyboard options available when the progress bar appears. You can check which options are available and their description by hovering over progress bar.

---

- b. In the Recovery Options page, select one of the following recovery methods and specify the recovery options:
  - **Default Recovery:** Critical volumes (system disks, boot disk, and the Data Protector installation volume) are recovered. All other disks are partitioned and formatted and remain empty and ready for Phase 3.
  - **Minimal Recovery:** Only system and boot disks are recovered.
  - **Full Recovery:** All volumes are recovered, not just the critical ones.
  - **Full with Shared Volumes:** Available for Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) only. This option should be used if all nodes in the MSCS have been struck by a disaster and you are performing EADR on the first node. It will recover all volumes in the Restore Set including cluster shared volumes that were locked by the backed-up node at backup time.

If at least one node is up and MSCS is running, then shared volumes will not be restored because the node keeps them locked. In this case, you should use *Default Recovery*.

The following additional recovery options are available, some of them are used in cases where the disaster recovery does not finish completely or requires additional steps:

- **Restore DAT:** If selected, the Data Protector disaster recovery module (DR module) also restores Microsoft VSS writers' data. By default, the DR module skips the restore of VSS writer's data. You can use this option if Data Protector fails to back up critical writers during a non-VSS backup. To restore the data before a Data Protector restore, select **Pre**. To restore the data after, a Data Protector restore, select **Post**.
- **Restore BCD:** If selected, the DR module also restores the Boot Configuration Data (BCD) store in advance during the disaster recovery session, before it is restored in the Data Protector restore session. Boot Configuration Data is needed for the system to boot. The option is selected by default.
- **Restore network configuration:** Select this option if you need to restore the original network configuration for the DR OS environment (for example, due to a missing

DHCP server). By default, this option is not selected and the DR OS recovery environment uses a DHCP network configuration.

- **Restore iSCSI Configuration:** This option is enabled and selected if the original machine was using iSCSI. By selecting this option Data Protector automatically restores the basic iSCSI configuration as it was at backup time. If not selected, the iSCSI configuration will be skipped.

You can also use the native Microsoft iSCSI configuration wizard to manage a more complex iSCSI configuration. If the DR GUI detects certain iSCSI features (for example, security options) which require a manual configuration, it offers the option to run the Microsoft iSCSI configuration wizard.

- **Manual Map Cluster Disks:** Available only in cluster environments. If selected, you can map cluster volumes manually. If not selected, the volumes will be mapped automatically. HP recommends to check that all volumes are mapped appropriately after automatic mapping.
- **Enable Dissimilar Hardware:** If enabled, Data Protector scans the system for missing drivers during the recovery. The option is enabled by selecting one of the following methods from the drop-down list:
  - **Unattend** (default): This mode automatically configures the operating system to various hardware platforms using a predefined configuration file. This is the primary mode of recovery with dissimilar hardware. Use it in the first instance.
  - **Generic:** Select this if Unattend mode fails (perhaps because of a misconfiguration of the restored operating system). It is based on adapting the restored OS registry and its drivers and services to the dissimilar hardware.

For more details on recovery to dissimilar hardware see [“Recovery to dissimilar hardware” \(page 117\)](#).

- **Remove Devices:** Available only if the Dissimilar Hardware option is enabled. If selected, Data Protector removes original devices from the registry of the restored operating system.
- **Remove Boot Descriptor:** Available only on Intel Itanium systems. Removes all Boot Descriptors left over by the disaster recovery processes. See [“Problems on Windows Itanium systems” \(page 112\)](#).
- **Manual disk selection:** Available only on Intel Itanium systems. If the disk setup has changed significantly, the disaster recovery module may not be able to find the boot disk(s). Use this option to select the correct boot disk. See [“Problems on Windows Itanium systems” \(page 112\)](#).

Click **Finish**.

- c. The recovery process starts and you can monitor the progress.

If the volumes are encrypted using BitLocker Drive Encryption, you are prompted to unlock the encrypted drives. If you do not unlock the volume, the volume *is no longer encrypted after disaster recovery*. See [“Unlocking volumes locked with Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption” \(page 74\)](#).



**TIP:** In the HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery GUI, you can click **Tasks** to perform the following:

- Run Command Prompt, Task Manager, or Disk Administrator
- Access the Map Network Drives and Load Drivers tools
- View log files specific to the disaster recovery process
- Enable or disable the DRM configuration file, view this file in text editor, and edit it
- Access Help and view the legends to GUI icons

---

### **Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:**

- a. Press **F12** when the following message is displayed: To start recovery of the machine *HOSTNAME* press F12.
- b. The scope selection menu is displayed at the beginning of the boot process. Select the scope of recovery and press **Enter**. There are five different scopes of recovery:
  - **Reboot:** Disaster recovery is not performed and the system is restarted.
  - **Default Recovery:** Critical volumes (system disks, boot disk, and the Data Protector installation volume) are recovered. All other disks are partitioned and formatted and remain empty and ready for Phase 3.
  - **Minimal Recovery:** Only system and boot disks are recovered.
  - **Full Recovery:** All volumes are recovered, not just the critical ones.
  - **Full with Shared Volumes:** Available for Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) only. This option should be used if all nodes in the MSCS have been struck by a disaster and you are performing EADR on the first node. It will recover all volumes in the Restore Set including cluster shared volumes that were locked by the backed-up node at backup time.

If at least one node is up and MSCS is running, then shared volumes will not be restored because the node keeps them locked. In this case, you should use Default Recovery.

The following additional recovery options are available, some of them are used in cases where the disaster recovery does not finish completely or requires additional steps:

- **Remove Boot Descriptor:** Available only on Intel Itanium systems. Removes all Boot Descriptors left over by the disaster recovery processes. See [“Problems on Windows Itanium systems” \(page 112\)](#).
  - **Manual disk selection:** Available only on Intel Itanium systems. If the disk setup has changed significantly, the disaster recovery module may not be able to find the boot disk(s). Use this option to select the correct boot disk. See [“Problems on Windows Itanium systems” \(page 112\)](#).
5. After you have selected the scope of the recovery, Data Protector sets up the DR OS directly to the hard disk. You can monitor the progress and for Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, when the DR OS is set up, the system restarts. On Windows Vista and later releases, this step is skipped, and the restart is not performed.

Wait for 10 seconds when prompted To start recovery of the machine *HOSTNAME* press F12, to boot from the hard disk and not from the CD.

The Disaster Recovery Wizard appears. To modify the disaster recovery options, press any key to stop the wizard during the countdown and modify the options. Click **Finish** to continue with the disaster recovery.

6. If the disaster recovery backup is encrypted by Data Protector and the Cell Manager is not accessible, the following prompt is displayed:  
Do you want to use AES key file for decryption [y/n]?  
Press **y**.  
Ensure that the keystore (*DR-ClientName-keys.csv*) is available on the client (by inserting a medium on which you have the key) and enter the full path to the keystore file. The keystore file is copied to the default location on the DR OS and is used by the Disk Agents. Disaster recovery now continues without further interruption.
7. If you are performing an offline recovery and the information in the SRD file is not up to date (for example, because you changed the backup device after the disaster), edit the SRD file, before you can continue with this procedure. See [“Recovery using an edited SRD file” \(page 71\)](#).
8. Data Protector will then reestablish the previous storage structure within the selected scope of recovery and restore all critical volumes. The temporary DR OS will be deleted after the first login, except in the following cases:
  - **Minimal Recovery** is selected.
  - You interrupt the Disaster Recovery Wizard during the 10 second pause (after it has found the DR installation and SRD file on the backup medium) and select the **Debugs** option.
  - You manually execute the `omnidr` command with the `-no_reset` or `-debug` option.
  - Disaster recovery fails.On Windows Vista and later releases, the temporary DR OS is never retained.
9. Remove the client’s local Administrator account created in [Step 1](#) from the Data Protector Admin user group on the Cell Manager, unless it existed on the Cell Manager before the disaster recovery.
10. Additional steps are required if you are recovering a Cell Manager or performing advanced recovery tasks (such as restoring MSCS or IIS, editing the `kb.cfg` and SRD files). For more information, see [“Restoring the Data Protector Cell Manager specifics” \(page 69\)](#) and [“Advanced recovery tasks” \(page 64\)](#).
11. Restore user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

---

**NOTE:** Data Protector does not restore the volume-compression flag after recovery. All files that were compressed at backup time will be restored as compressed, but you will have to manually set the volume compression if you want any newly created files to be compressed as well.

---

## One Button Disaster Recovery of a Windows system

One Button Disaster Recovery (OBDR) is an automated Data Protector recovery method for Windows Data Protector clients, where user intervention is reduced to minimum. For details on supported operating systems, see the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

OBDR collects all relevant environment data automatically at backup time. During backup, data required for temporary DR OS setup and configuration is packed in a single large OBDR image file and stored on the backup tape. When a disaster occurs, the OBDR device (backup device, capable of emulating CD-ROM) is used to boot the target system directly from the tape which contains the OBDR image file with disaster recovery information.

Once DR OS Image is booted, Data Protector automatically formats and partitions the disk and finally restores the original operating system with Data Protector as it was at the time of backup.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new backup after each hardware, software or configuration change. This also applies to any network configuration changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.
- 

The recovered volumes are:

- The boot partition
- The system partition
- The partitions storing the Data Protector installation data

Any remaining partitions can be recovered using the standard Data Protector recovery procedure.

## Overview

The general steps using the One Button Disaster Recovery method for a Windows client are:

1. **Phase 0**
  - a. You need an OBDR backup image (create the backup specification using the Data Protector One Button Disaster Recovery Wizard).
  - b. If you are using encrypted backups, store the encryption key on a removable medium so that it is available for disaster recovery.
2. **Phase 1**

Boot from the recovery tape and select the scope of recovery.
3. **Phase 2**

Depending on the recovery scope you select, the selected volumes are automatically restored. Critical volumes (the boot partition and the operating system) are always restored.
4. **Phase 3**

Restore any remaining partitions using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** HP recommends to restrict access to OBDR boot media.
- 

The following sections explain the requirements, limitations, preparation and recovery pertaining to One Button Disaster Recovery on Windows systems. See also “[Advanced recovery tasks](#)” (page 64).

## Prerequisites

- The Data Protector Automatic Disaster Recovery and User Interface components must be installed on systems for which you want to enable recovery using this method. For details, see the *HP Data Protector Installation and Licensing Guide*.
- The client system must support booting from the tape device that will be used for OBDR. For more information about supported systems, devices and media, see the HP Tape Hardware Compatibility Table and the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.
- The hardware configuration of the target system must be the same as of the original system. This includes SCSI BIOS settings (sector remapping).
- The new disk have to be the same size or bigger than the affected disk. If it is larger than the original disk, the difference will remain unallocated.
- The replacement disks have to be attached to the same host bus adapter on the same bus.
- Windows XP, Windows Server 2003: The boot partition (on which the DR OS is installed) must be larger than 200 MB or disaster recovery will fail. If you enabled the Compress drive option to save disk space option on the original partition, you must have 400 MB free.



- During OBDR backup, the partition on which Data Protector is installed should have at least 200 MB of temporary free space. This space is required to create a temporary image.
- Windows Server 2003: All drivers, required for boot must be installed under the %SystemRoot% folder.
- A media pool with a Non-appendable media usage policy and Loose media allocation policy has to be created for the OBDR capable device. Only the media from such pool can be used for disaster recovery.
- Windows XP, Windows Server 2003: The operating system should be activated at the time of the backup. Otherwise, when the activation period expires, disaster recovery fails.
- To create a DR OS image for Windows Vista and later releases, you must install the appropriate version of Windows Automated Installation Kit (WAIK) or the Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) on the system for which you will perform the OBDR backup:

**Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008:**

Automated Installation Kit (AIK) for Windows Vista SP1 and Windows Server 2008

**Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2:**

- Windows Automated Installation Kit (AIK) for Windows 7
- Windows Automated Installation Kit (AIK) Supplement for Windows 7 SP1 (optional, for Microsoft Windows 7 SP1 and Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1)

**Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:**

- Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) for Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012  
You need the following components:
  - Deployment Tools
  - Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE)
- To back up the IIS configuration object on Windows Vista and later releases, install the IIS 6 Metabase Compatibility package.

## Limitations

- One Button Disaster Recovery (OBDR) method is not available for Data Protector Cell Managers.
- One Button Disaster Recovery backup session can only be performed for one selected client on the same OBDR device at a time. This has to be done on a single, locally attached OBDR capable device.
- Dynamic disks are not supported (including mirror set upgraded from Windows NT).
- Only vendor specific partitions of type 0x12 (including EISA) and 0xFE are supported for OBDR.
- Multiboot systems that do not use Microsoft's boot loader are not supported.
- OBDR is supported only on systems where Data Protector is installed on an NTFS volume.
- On Intel Itanium systems, recovery of a boot disk is supported only for local SCSI disks.
- Recovery of a SAN boot configuration is not supported.
- On Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, a console interface is available instead of the HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery GUI.
- On Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, recovery of a configuration with Network Teaming adapters is not supported.
- On Windows Vista and later releases, originally encrypted folders can only be restored as unencrypted.

- Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012 Storage Spaces are not supported.
- Internet Information Server (IIS), Terminal Services Database and Certificate Server Database are not restored automatically during Phase 2. They can be restored on the target system using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

## Preparation

Before completing the steps listed in this section, see also [“Planning” \(page 22\)](#) for the general preparation procedure for all disaster recovery methods. See also [“Advanced recovery tasks” \(page 64\)](#).

❗ **IMPORTANT:** Prepare for disaster recovery *before* a disaster occurs.

Create a media pool for DDS or LTO media with `Non-appendable` media usage policy (to ensure that this will be the only backup image on the backup medium) and `Loose` media allocation policy (because the backup media is formatted during OBDR backup). In addition, select this media pool as a default media pool for the OBDR device. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “creating media pool”. Only media from such pool can be used for OBDR.

**Windows Vista and later releases:** Make sure that you back up the system volume if present.

### **Windows Server 2012:**

- Use disk image backup to back up volumes in the following cases:
  - Deduplicated volumes
 

During a filesystem restore, the volume is rehydrated and you might run out of space on the destination volume during recovery. A disk image restore keeps the size of the volume.
  - Volumes with Resilient File System (ReFS)

### **Microsoft Cluster Server:**

Consistent backup image for a Microsoft Cluster Server includes:

- All nodes
- Administrative virtual server (defined by the administrator)
- If Data Protector is configured as a cluster-aware application, Data Protector client system's cluster virtual server

The above items should be included in the same backup session.

For details see [“Restoring the Microsoft Cluster Server specifics” \(page 65\)](#).

To enable an automatic restore of all shared disk volumes on the MSCS using the OBDR method, move all volumes temporarily to the node for which you are preparing the OBDR boot tape so that shared disk volumes are not locked by another node during the OBDR backup. It is namely impossible to collect enough information for configuring the disk during Phase 1 for shared disk volumes that are locked by another node during the backup.

**Cluster Shared Volumes:** Before performing a full backup of the client system, back up the Virtual Hard Drive (VHD) files and CSV configuration data using the Data Protector Virtual Environment integration first. See the *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for Virtualization Environments*. The backup must be performed on a separate device, because an OBDR backup can be performed only on non-appendable media.

## Creating a backup specification for OBDR and performing an OBDR backup

Create the OBDR backup specification and start the OBDR backup:

1. In the Context List, select **Backup**.
2. Click **Tasks** navigation tab and select **One Button Disaster Recovery Wizard** in the Scoping Pane.

3. In the Client Systems drop-down list, select the client for which you want to create an OBDR backup specification. The client must have a Disk Agent installed.
4. Click **Next**.
5. All critical objects are already selected and cannot be deselected. Manually select additional volumes whose data you want to preserve, because during the recovery procedure, Data Protector deletes all volumes from your system. Click **Next**.
6. Select the locally attached OBDR device you are going to use for backup and click **Next**.
7. Select backup options. For more details on available options, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "backup options".

**Windows Vista and later releases:**

Specify the WAIK/ADK options:

- Windows Automated Installation Kit (WAIK) or Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) directory

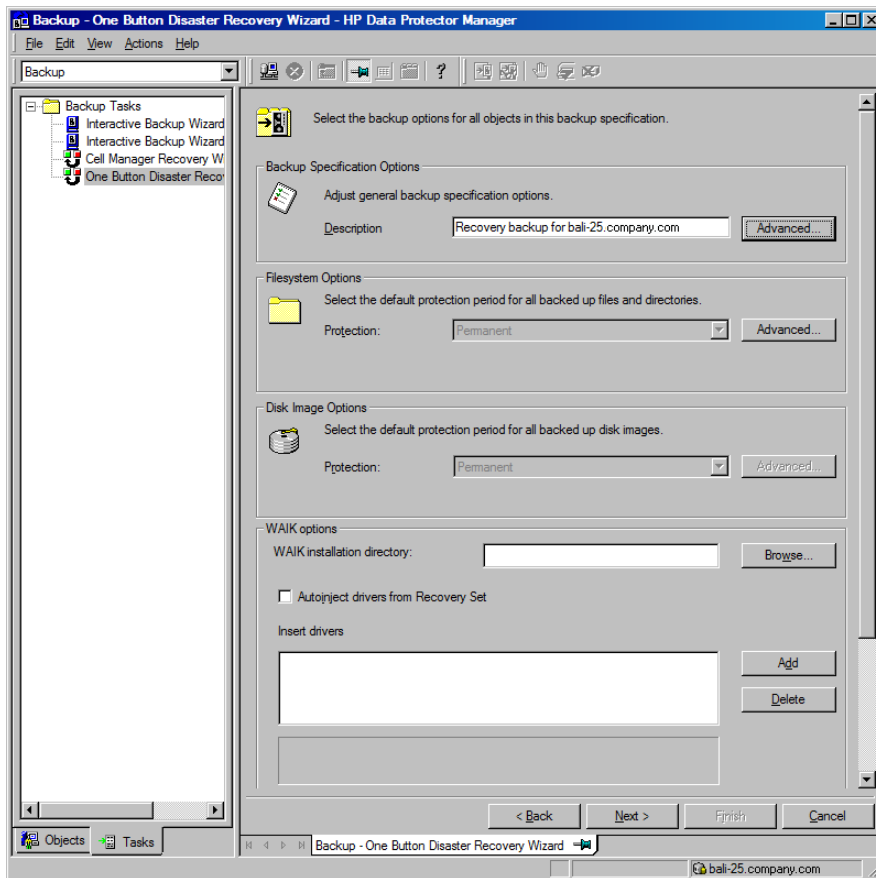
Once you enter the location, Data Protector saves it and uses it as the default selection in the GUI the next time a DR OS image is created. If no directory is specified, Data Protector will use the default WAIK or ADK path.

- Drivers that you want to insert into the DR OS image

You can use this option to add missing drivers to the DR OS image. Add or remove drivers manually by clicking **Add** or **Remove**. To insert the drivers which are part of the client recovery set, select **Autoinject drivers from Recovery Set**. The drivers from the %Drivers% part of the recovery set will be automatically injected into the DR OS image, although they will not be visible in the Insert drivers text box.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** The drivers collected during the backup procedure and stored within the recovery set's %Drivers% directory may not always be appropriate for use in the DR OS. In some cases, Windows Preinstall Environment (WinPE) specific drivers may need to be injected to ensure that the hardware is functioning properly during the recovery.
-

Figure 4 Windows Vista and later releases



8. Click **Next** to proceed to the Scheduler page, which can be used to schedule the backup. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “scheduling backups on specific dates and times”.
9. Click **Next** to display the Backup Object Summary page, in which you can review the backup options.

**NOTE:** In the Summary page, you cannot change a previously selected backup device or the order in which the backup specifications follow one another (move up and move down functionalities are not available). Only OBDR non-essential backup objects can be deleted as well as general object properties can be viewed.

However, a backup object’s description can be changed.

10. In the final page of the Backup wizard, you can save the backup specification, start the interactive backup, or preview the backup.  
HP recommends to save the backup specification so that you can schedule or modify it later. Once a backup specification is saved, you can edit it. Right-click the backup specification and select **Properties**. You are offered to treat the modified backup specification as a standard Data Protector backup specification or as an OBDR backup specification. Save it as an OBDR backup specification to keep it in the original One Button Disaster Recovery format. You can also save it as a standard backup specification, for example, if you want to specify disk image objects. It is still usable for OBDR purposes.
11. Click **Start Backup** to run the backup interactively. The Start Backup dialog box appears. Click **OK** to start the backup.

A bootable image file of the system, containing all information required for installation and configuration of temporary DR OS, will be written at the beginning of the tape to make it bootable.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new backup and prepare a bootable backup medium after each hardware, software, or configuration change. This also applies to any network configuration changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.
- 

## Modifying an OBDR backup specification to use disk image backup

On Windows Vista and later releases, you can choose to back up logical volumes as disk images by using the VSS writers. This ensures that the volumes remain unlocked during the backup and can be accessed by other applications. To back up logical volumes as disk images, you must modify the backup specification created for OBDR:

1. In the Scoping Pane, click the created OBDR backup specification. When you are asked, whether you want to treat it as an OBDR backup specification or as an ordinary backup specification, click **No**.

---

**NOTE:** When an OBDR backup specification is saved as an ordinary backup specification, it can be still used for the OBDR.

---

2. In the Backup Object Summary page, select the logical volumes that you want to back up as disk images and click **Delete**.

---

**NOTE:** You can back up only logical volumes. The CONFIGURATION object, as well as volumes that are not mounted or are mounted as NTFS folders, should be backed up with filesystem backup.

---

3. Click **Manual add** to open the wizard.
4. In the Select Backup Object page, click the `Disk image object` option, and then click **Next**.
5. In the General Selection page, select a client with the disk image you want to back up and provide an appropriate description. Click **Next**.

---

**NOTE:** Description must be unique for each disk image object. Use a descriptive name, for example, `[Disk Image C]` for C: volume.

---

6. In the General Object Options property page, set data protection to `None`. Click **Next**.

---

**NOTE:** When you set data protection to `None`, the content of the OBDR tape can be overwritten by the newer OBDR backups.

---

7. In the Advanced Object Options property page, you can specify advanced backup options for the disk image object. Click **Next**.
8. In the Disk Image Object Options property page, specify the disk image sections to back up. Use the following format:

`\\.\DriveLetter:`, for example: `\\.\E:`

---

**NOTE:** When the volume name is specified as a drive letter, the volume is not being locked during the backup. A volume that is not mounted or is mounted as an NTFS folder cannot be used for the disk image backup.

---

9. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard.
10. In the Backup Object Summary page, review the summary of the backup specification. The logical volumes that you specified as disk images, should be of a Disk Image type. Click **Apply**.

## The kb.cfg file on Windows XP and Windows Server 2003

The purpose of this file is to provide a flexible method to enable Data Protector to include drivers (and other needed files) in the DR OS to cover systems with specific boot relevant hardware or application configurations. The default `kb.cfg` file already contains all files necessary for industry standard hardware configurations.

Create and execute a test plan using the default version of the `kb.cfg` file. If the DR OS does not boot normally or cannot access network, then you may need to modify the file. See [“Editing the kb.cfg file” \(page 71\)](#).

---

**⚠ CAUTION:** HP recommends to restrict access to backup media due to security reasons.

---

## Preparing the encryption keys

For an offline client recovery, you must ensure that the encryption keys are available during the disaster recovery by storing them on a removable medium.

The encryption keys are not part of the DR OS image file. During the disaster recovery image creation, the keys are automatically exported to the Cell Manager into the default Data Protector encryption keys directory with the filename `DR-ClientName-keys.csv`, where *ClientName* is the name of the client for which the image is being created.

Ensure that you have the correct encryption key for each backup that is prepared for a disaster recovery.

## Recovery

You need the following to successfully perform a disaster recovery on the affected system:

- A new hard disk to replace your affected disk (if needed).
- A bootable backup medium with all critical objects of the client that you want to recover.
- An OBDR device connected locally to the target system.
- **Windows Server 2003:** If case the affected system is a domain controller, the password of the Directory Services Restore Mode administrator account.

The following is a step-by-step procedure for performing a One Button Disaster Recovery of a Windows system:

1. Unless you are performing an offline disaster recovery, add the account with the following properties to the Data Protector Admin user group on the Cell Manager, depending on the operating system of the target system:

**Windows Vista and later releases:**

- Type: Windows
- Name: SYSTEM
- Group/Domain: NT AUTHORITY
- Client: the temporary hostname of the system being recovered

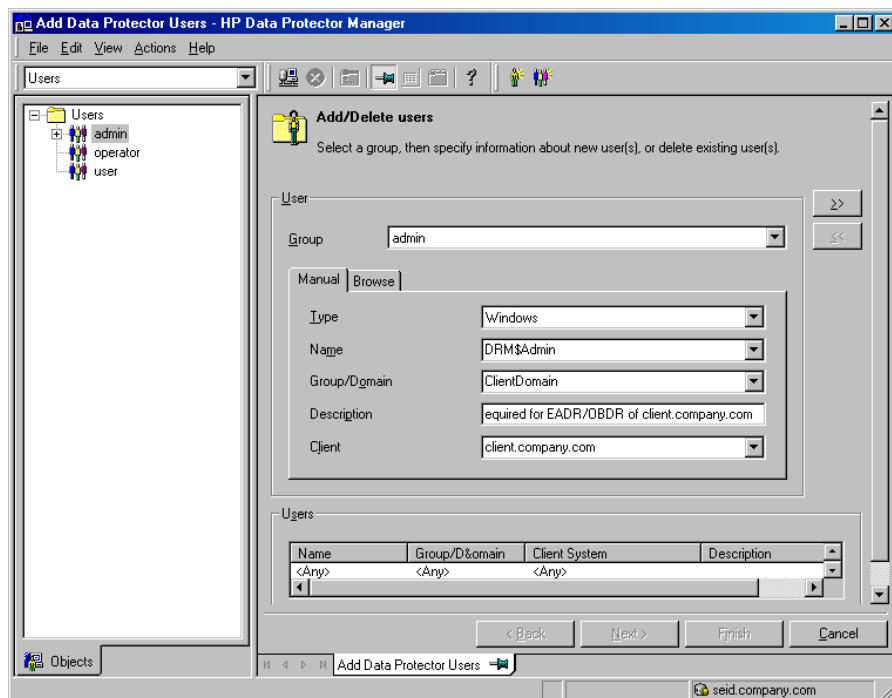
A temporary hostname is assigned to the system by the Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE). You can retrieve it by executing the `hostname` command in the Command Prompt window of the WinPE.

**Windows XP, Windows Server 2003:**

- Type: Windows
- Name: DRM\$Admin
- Group/Domain: hostname of the target system
- Client: fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the target system

For more information on adding users, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "adding Data Protector users".

**Figure 5 Adding a user account**



**NOTE:** If you are using encrypted control communication between the clients in a cell, you must add the client to the Security Exceptions list on the Cell Manager before you start the recovery. Unless you are using a local device, the Media Agent client must be added to the Security Exceptions list on the Cell Manager as well.

2. Insert the tape containing the image file and your backed up data into an OBDR device.
3. Shut down the target system and power off the tape device. Ensure that no external USB disks (including USB flash drives) are connected to the system before you start the recovery procedure.

4. Power the target system on and, while it is being initialized, press the eject button on the tape device and power it on. For details, see the device documentation.
5. Select the scope of the recovery and recovery options. The following steps differ depending on the operating system:

**Windows Vista and later releases:**

- a. The HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery GUI (the Installer Wizard) appears and displays the original system information. Click **Next**.



**TIP:** There are some keyboard options available when the progress bar appears. You can check which options are available and their description by hovering over progress bar.

- b. In the Recovery Options page, select one of the following recovery methods and specify the recovery options:
  - **Default Recovery:** Critical volumes (system disks, boot disk, and the Data Protector installation volume) are recovered. All other disks are partitioned and formatted and remain empty and ready for Phase 3.
  - **Minimal Recovery:** Only system and boot disks are recovered.
  - **Full Recovery:** All volumes are recovered, not just the critical ones.
  - **Full with Shared Volumes:** Available for Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) only. This option should be used if all nodes in the MSCS have been struck by a disaster and you are performing OBDR on the first node. It will recover all volumes in the Restore Set including cluster shared volumes that were locked by the backed-up node at backup time.

If at least one node is up and MSCS is running, then shared volumes will not be restored because the node keeps them locked. In this case, you should use **Default Recovery**.

The following additional recovery options are available, some of them are used in cases where the disaster recovery does not finish completely or requires additional steps:

- **Restore DAT:** If selected, the Data Protector disaster recovery module (DR module) also restores Microsoft VSS writers' data. By default, the DR module skips the restore of VSS writer's data. You can use this option if Data Protector fails to back up critical writers during a non-VSS backup. To restore the data before a Data Protector restore, select **Pre**. To restore the data after, a Data Protector restore, select **Post**.
- **Restore BCD:** If selected, the DR module also restores the Boot Configuration Data (BCD) store in advance during the disaster recovery session, before it is restored in the Data Protector restore session. Boot Configuration Data is needed for the system to boot. The option is selected by default.
- **Restore network configuration:** Select this option if you need to restore the original network configuration for the DR OS environment (for example, due to a missing DHCP server). By default, this option is not selected and the DR OS recovery environment uses a DHCP network configuration.
- **Restore iSCSI Configuration:** This option is enabled and selected if the original machine was using iSCSI. By selecting this option Data Protector automatically restores the basic iSCSI configuration as it was at backup time. If not selected, the iSCSI configuration will be skipped.

You can also use the native Microsoft iSCSI configuration wizard to manage a more complex iSCSI configuration. If the DR GUI detects certain iSCSI features (for example, security options) which require a manual configuration, it offers the option to run the Microsoft iSCSI configuration wizard.



- **Manual Map Cluster Disks:** Available only on Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2012 systems. If selected, you can map cluster volumes manually. If not selected, the volumes will be mapped automatically. HP recommend to check that all volumes are mapped appropriately after automatic mapping.
- **Dissimilar Hardware:** Available only on Windows Vista and later releases. If enabled, Data Protector scans the system for missing drivers during the recovery. The option is enabled by selecting one of the following methods from the drop-down list:
  - **Unattend** (default): This mode automatically configures the operating system to various hardware platforms using a predefined configuration file. This is the primary mode of recovery with dissimilar hardware. Use it in the first instance.
  - **Generic:** Select this if Unattend mode fails (perhaps because of a misconfiguration of the restored operating system). It is based on adapting the restored OS registry and its drivers and services to the dissimilar hardware.
- **Remove Devices:** Available only if the Dissimilar Hardware option is enabled. If selected, Data Protector removes original devices from the registry of the restored operating system.
- **Remove Boot Descriptor:** Available only on Intel Itanium systems. Removes all Boot Descriptors left over by the disaster recovery processes. See [“Problems on Windows Itanium systems”](#) (page 112).
- **Manual disk selection:** Available only on Intel Itanium systems. If the disk setup has changed significantly, the disaster recovery module may not be able to find the boot disk(s). Use this option to select the correct boot disk. See [“Problems on Windows Itanium systems”](#) (page 112).

Click **Finish**.

- The recovery process starts and you can monitor the progress.  
If the volumes are encrypted using BitLocker Drive Encryption, you are prompted to unlock the encrypted drives. If you do not unlock the volume, the volume *is no longer encrypted after disaster recovery*. See [“Unlocking volumes locked with Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption”](#) (page 74).



**TIP:** In the HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery GUI, you can click **Tasks** to perform the following:

- Run Command Prompt, Task Manager, or Disk Administrator
- Access the Map Network Drives and Load Drivers tools
- View log files specific to the disaster recovery process
- Enable or disable the DRM configuration file, view this file in text editor, and edit it
- Access Help and view the legends to GUI icons

### **Windows XP and Windows Server 2003:**

- Press **F12** when the following message is displayed: To start recovery of the machine *HOSTNAME* press F12.
- The scope selection menu is displayed at the beginning of the boot process. Select the scope of recovery and press **Enter**. There are five different scopes of recovery:
  - **Reboot:** Disaster recovery is not performed and the system is restarted.
  - **Default Recovery:** Critical volumes (system disks, boot disk, and the Data Protector installation volume) are recovered. All other disks are partitioned and formatted and remain empty and ready for Phase 3.

- **Minimal Recovery:** Only system and boot disks are recovered.
- **Full Recovery:** All volumes are recovered, not just the critical ones.
- **Full with Shared Volumes:** Available for Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) only. This option should be used if all nodes in the MSCS have been struck by a disaster and you are performing OBDP on the first node. It will recover all volumes in the Restore Set including cluster shared volumes that were locked by the backed-up node at backup time.  
If at least one node is up and MSCS is running, then shared volumes will not be restored because the node keeps them locked. In this case, you should use `Default Recovery`.

The following additional recovery options are available, some of them are used in cases where the disaster recovery does not finish completely or requires additional steps:

- **Remove Boot Descriptor:** Available only on Intel Itanium systems. Removes all Boot Descriptors left over by the disaster recovery processes. See [“Problems on Windows Itanium systems”](#) (page 112).
  - **Manual disk selection:** Available only on Intel Itanium systems. If the disk setup has changed significantly, the disaster recovery module may not be able to find the boot disk(s). Use this option to select the correct boot disk. See [“Problems on Windows Itanium systems”](#) (page 112).
6. After you have selected the scope of recovery, Data Protector starts setting up the DR OS directly to the hard disk. You can monitor the progress and, when the DR OS is set up, the system restarts. On Windows Vista and later releases, the DR OS is not installed and the restart is not performed.

To modify the disaster recovery options, press any key to stop the wizard during the countdown and modify the options. Click **Finish** to continue with the disaster recovery.

7. If the disaster recovery backup is encrypted and you are recovering a client where the Cell Manager is not accessible, the following prompt will appear:

Do you want to use AES key file for decryption [y/n]?

Press **y**.

Ensure that the keystore (`DR-ClientName-keys.csv`) is available on the client (for example, by inserting a CD-ROM, floppy disk, or USB drive) and enter the full path to the keystore file. The keystore file is copied to the default location on the DR OS and is used by the Disk Agents. Disaster recovery now continues without further interruption.

8. If you are performing an offline recovery and the information in the SRD file is not up to date (for example, because you changed the backup device after the disaster), edit the SRD file, before you can continue with this procedure. See [“Recovery using an edited SRD file”](#) (page 71).

9. Data Protector will then reestablish the previous storage structure and restore all critical volumes.

The temporary DR OS will be deleted after the first login, except for the following cases:

- **Minimal Recovery** is selected.
- You interrupt the Disaster Recovery Wizard during the 10 second pause (after it had found the DR installation and the SRD file on the backup medium) and select the **Debugs** option.
- You manually execute the `omnidr` command with the `-no_reset` or `-debug` option.
- Disaster recovery fails.

On Windows Vista and later releases, the temporary DR OS is never retained.

10. Remove the client's local Administrator account created in [Step 1](#) from the Data Protector Admin user group on the Cell Manager, unless it existed on the Cell Manager before the disaster recovery.
11. Additional steps are required if you are performing advanced recovery tasks (such as restoring MSCS or IIS, editing the `kb.cfg` and SRD files). For more information, "[Advanced recovery tasks](#)" (page 64).
12. Restore the user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

---

**NOTE:** Data Protector does not restore the volume-compression flag after recovery. All files that were compressed at backup time will be restored as compressed, but you will have to manually set the volume compression if you want any new files created to be compressed as well.

---

## Automated System Recovery

Automated System Recovery (ASR) is an automated system on Windows systems, which reconfigures a disk to its original state (or resizes the partitions if the new disk is larger than the original disk) in the case of a disaster. This includes disk partitioning and logical volume configuration (file formats, drive letter assignments, volume mountpoints, and volume characteristics). ASR thus enables the Data Protector `drstart` command to install the active DR OS which provides Data Protector disk, network, tape, and file system access.

Data Protector then recovers the target system to the original system configuration and finally restores all user data.

For details on supported operating systems, see the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a full client backup after each hardware, software, or configuration change and update the ASR diskettes. This also applies to any network configuration changes, such as change of the IP address or DNS server.

**IMPORTANT:** Create the ASR set for the Cell Manager in advance, because you will not be able to obtain the ASR archive file after the disaster. ASR sets for other systems can be created using Cell Manager when a disaster occurs.

---

The recovered volumes are:

- the boot partition
- the system partition
- the partitions containing Data Protector

Any remaining partitions can be recovered using the standard Data Protector recovery procedure.

## Overview

The general steps for using the ASR method for a Windows client are:

### 1. Phase 0

- a. Perform a full client backup.
- b. Prepare ASR diskettes with Data Protector binaries and update the first diskette after each configuration change.
- c. If you are using encrypted backups, store the encryption key on a removable medium so that it is available for disaster recovery. You will need the key for a Cell Manager recovery or if the connection to the Cell Manager cannot be established.

### 2. Phase 1

- a. Boot from the Windows installation medium and enter the ASR mode by pressing **F2**.
- b. Provide the first (updated) diskette from the ASR set.

- c. After restart, provide information about the location of DR installation and SRD file (a : \).
- d. Change diskettes when prompted.

### 3. Phase 2

- a. All critical objects are automatically restored. Restart the system and remove the Windows installation medium and ASR diskette.

### 4. Phase 3

- a. Restore user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

ASR is used to perform (a part of) preparation for a disaster and repartitioning and reformatting the boot partition. Data Protector provides all other features such as easy central administration, high performance backup, high availability support, easy restore, monitoring, reporting and notifications, and so on.

The following sections explain the requirements, limitations, preparation, and recovery pertaining to Automated System Recovery on Windows systems. See also [“Advanced recovery tasks”](#) (page 64).

## Requirements

- The Data Protector Automatic Disaster Recovery component must be installed on systems for which you want to enable recovery using this method. For details, see the *HP Data Protector Installation and Licensing Guide*.
- If you are using a firewall, ports 1071 and 1073 must be open. ASR does not support the OB2PORTRANGE and OB2PORTRANGESPEC variables.

## Hardware configuration

- The hardware configuration of the target system must be identical to that of the original system, except for hard disk drives, video cards and network interface cards. If you have replaced a network card or a video card, you will have to manually configure it.
- Floppy disk drive must be installed.
- Floppy disk drives and CD-ROM drives must be connected to IDE or SCSI controllers. External devices such as USB or PCMCIA devices are not supported.

However, ASR using the USB flash drive is supported on HP Integrity servers (IA-64 platform). For details, see the *Recovering Windows Server 2003 on HP Integrity servers* whitepaper available at <http://docs.hp.com/en/windows.html>.

## Hard Disk Drives

- The target system must have the same number of physical disks with critical volumes as the original system.
- Replacement disks must be attached to the same host bus adapter on the same bus.
- The storage capacity of each replacement disk on the target system must be bigger than or equal to the capacity of the corresponding disk on the original system. In addition, disk geometry of the replacement disk must be the same as on the replaced disk.
- All disks on the target system must have 512 bytes-per-sector.
- All disks used in ASR must be accessible to the system (hardware RAID must be configured, SCSI disks must be correctly terminated, and so on)

## Limitations

- Windows XP Home Edition does not support ASR.
- Multiboot systems that do not use Microsoft's boot loader are not supported.

- Internet Information Server (IIS) Database, Terminal Services Database, and Certificate Server Database are not restored automatically during Phase 2. They can be restored on the target system using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.
- Data stored on vendor specific partitions is not automatically restored during ASR. The partitions will be recreated during the ASR but you will have to restore the data manually using the vendor specific procedure for restoring data. However, you can restore data on EISA utility partition using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.
- Only those local backup devices are supported, that can be installed by Windows during OS installation (no additional drivers are required).
- ASR cannot be used in IPv6-only environments. It can be used only in environments with a functioning DHCPv4 server.

## Preparation

Before completing the steps listed in this section, see also “[Planning](#)” (page 22), for the general preparation procedure for all disaster recovery methods. In order to prepare for disaster recovery, see also “[Advanced recovery tasks](#)” (page 64).

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** Prepare for disaster recovery *before* a disaster occurs.

---

### Prerequisites

- A full client backup (including the configuration) is a prerequisite for successful ASR. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “backup, Windows specific” and “backup, configuration”.  
In case of Microsoft Cluster Server, consistent backup includes (in the same backup session):
  - all nodes
  - administrative virtual server (defined by the administrator)
  - if Data Protector is configured as a cluster aware application, Cell Manager virtual server and IDB.

For details, see “[Restoring the Microsoft Cluster Server specifics](#)” (page 65).

After you performed the full client backup, prepare an ASR set. An ASR set is a collection of files stored on three diskettes (for 32-bit systems), four diskettes (for AMD64/Intel EM64T systems), or six diskettes (for Itanium systems), required for proper reconfiguration of the replacement disk (disk partitioning and logical volume configuration) and automatic recovery of the original system configuration and the user data that was backed up during the full client backup. These files are stored as an ASR archive file on the Cell Manager in the directory `Data_Protector_program_data\Config\server\dr\asr` (Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012), `Data_Protector_home\Config\server\dr\asr` (other Windows systems), or `/etc/opt/omni/server/dr/asr/` (UNIX systems), as well as on the backup medium. After a disaster occurs, ASR archive file is extracted to three diskettes (for 32-bit systems), four diskettes (for AMD64/Intel EM64T systems), or six diskettes (for Itanium systems). You need these diskettes to perform ASR.

---

**NOTE:** Create the ASR set for the Cell Manager in advance, because you will not be able to obtain the ASR archive file after the disaster.

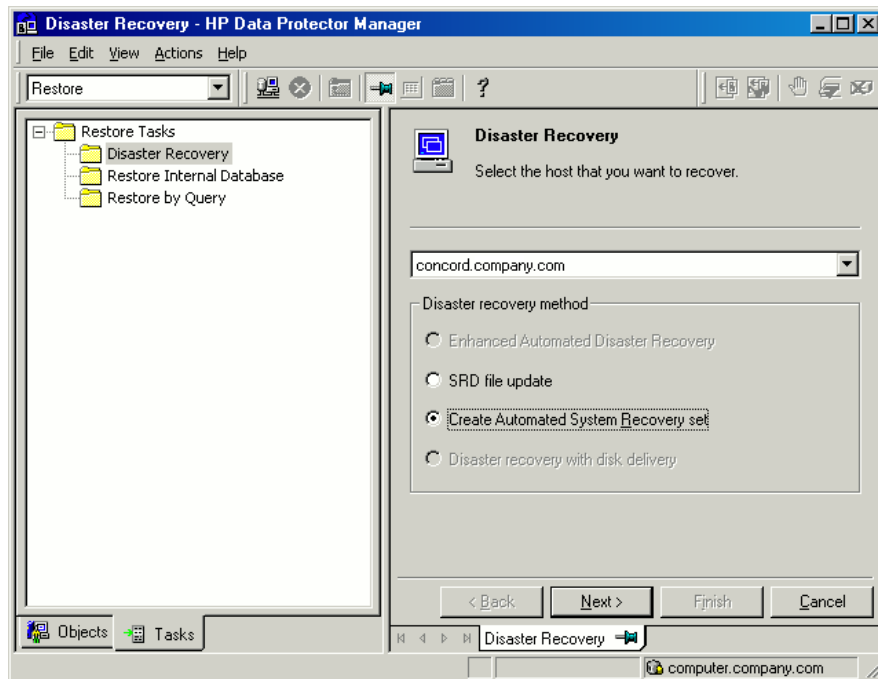
---

Perform the following steps to create an ASR set:

1. Perform a full client backup.
2. Insert a diskette in the floppy disk drive.
3. In the HP Data Protector Manager, switch to the Restore context.
4. Click the **Tasks** navigation tab and select **Disaster Recovery** in the Scoping Pane.

5. From the drop down list in the Results Area, select the client for which you would like to create an ASR set.
6. Click **Create Automated System Recovery** set and then click **Next**.

**Figure 6 Creating ASR set**



Data Protector will obtain the ASR archive file from the Cell Manager. If it is not saved on the Cell Manager, the Disaster Recovery wizard will offer you to recover it from the backup medium.

7. For each critical object, select the appropriate object version and click **Next**.
8. ASR archive file created during a full client backup is downloaded from the Cell Manager. Select the destination location where you want your ASR archive file extracted and select the **Copy DR installation** check box to copy DR installation files to the same location. The recommended destination is your floppy disk drive because you will need these files stored on diskettes (ASR set) to perform ASR.

Data Protector will create three diskettes (for a 32-bit system), four diskettes (for an AMD64/Intel EM64T system), or six diskettes (for an Itanium system). ASR set for the Cell Manager has to be prepared in advance, while you can prepare ASR diskettes for other systems using the Cell Manager when a disaster occurs.

Once the ASR set is created, you have to update only the first diskette (which contains ASR information) after each hardware, software or configuration change. This also applies to any network configuration changes, such as a change of the IP address or DNS server. In order to update the first diskette from the ASR set, repeat the whole procedure, but you do not have to select the Copy DR installation check box. This option copies the DR installation files (to a selected destination), which do not need to be updated.

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** It is recommended to restrict access to ASR diskettes due to security reasons.

---

## Local devices

If you are using a locally attached device for ASR, test if it is supported. To do so, perform the following steps:

1. Execute the `devbra -dev` command from the command prompt (from `Data_Protector_home\bin`).
2. Rename the `scsitab` file (located in `Data_Protector_home`) and run `devbra -dev` from the command prompt again.
3. Compare the both outputs of the `devbra -dev` command. If they are identical, ASR using this device is possible, otherwise copy the `scsitab` file to the first ASR diskette. You have to copy the `scsitab` file only the first time you are preparing the ASR set. You do not have to copy it when you are only updating the ASR set. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "support of new devices".
4. Rename the `scsitab` file back to the original name.

## Recovery

To successfully perform a disaster recovery of the affected system, you need the following:

- A new hard disk to replace your affected disk.
- A successful full client backup of the client that you want to recover.
- Updated ASR set.
- Windows installation medium.

The following is a step-by-step procedure for performing ASR:

1. Boot from the Windows installation medium.
2. Press **F2** during the start of the OS setup to enter the ASR mode.
3. Provide the first (updated) diskette from the ASR set.
4. After restart, Disaster Recovery wizard pops-up and requires input for the DR installation source and SRD Path. DR installation and SRD file are both located on the first diskette of the ASR set (`a:\`).

To modify other ASR settings, press any key to stop the wizard during the countdown and select the options. Click **Finish** to continue with ASR.

If the information in the SRD file on the ASR diskette is not up to date (for example, because you changed the backup device after the disaster) and you are performing an offline recovery, edit the SRD file before continuing with this procedure. See ["Recovery using an edited SRD file" \(page 71\)](#).

---

### NOTE:

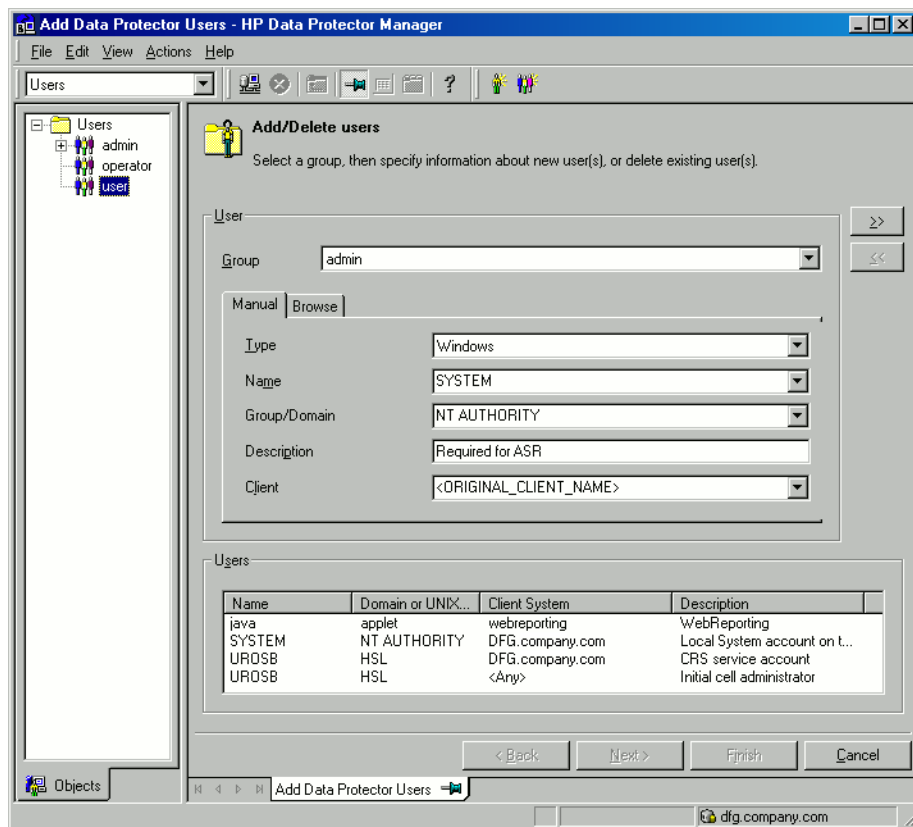
If original OS medium does not include appropriate network drivers, ASR will fail. You can install the network using the New Hardware wizard which can be invoked with the following command: `%SystemRoot%\system32\rundll32 shell32.dll,Control_RunDLL hdwwiz.cpl`

- 
5. Unless you are performing an offline disaster recovery, add the client's local system account to the Data Protector Admin user group on the Cell Manager. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "users, Data Protector".

Enter the same information as in ["User Name for ASR" \(page 64\)](#).



**Figure 7 User Name for ASR**



**NOTE:** If you are using encrypted control communication between the clients in a cell, you must add the client to the Security Exceptions list on the Cell Manager before you start the recovery. Unless you are using a local device, the Media Agent client must be added to the Security Exceptions list on the Cell Manager as well.

6. Change diskette(s) when prompted.
7. Restart the system when prompted and remove the Windows installation medium and ASR diskette.
8. If the disaster recovery backup is encrypted by Data Protector and you are either recovering the Cell Manager or a client where the Cell Manager is not accessible, the following prompt is displayed:

Do you want to use AES key file for decryption [y/n]?

Press **y**. Ensure that the keystore (DR-ClientName-keys.csv) is available on the client (by inserting a medium on which you have the key) and enter the full path to the keystore file. The keystore file is copied to the default location on the DR OS and is used by the Disk Agents.

9. Remove the client's local system account (created in [Step 5](#)) from the Data Protector Admin user group on the Cell Manager, unless it existed on the Cell Manager before the disaster recovery.
10. Restore user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

## Advanced recovery tasks

This section provides explanation of the steps you will need to take if you want to perform advanced recovery tasks such as restoring Microsoft Cluster Server and Internet Information Server.



## Restoring the Microsoft Cluster Server specifics

This section provides explanation of the steps you will need to take if you want to perform disaster recovery of a Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS). For concepts and general information please see the clustering section in the *HP Data Protector Concepts Guide* and the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "cluster".

Select the disaster recovery method that is appropriate for your cluster and include it in your disaster recovery plan. Consider the limitations and requirements of each disaster recovery method before making your decision. Perform tests from the test plan.

### Possible scenarios

There are two possible scenarios for disaster recovery of a MSCS:

- at least one of the nodes is up and running
- all nodes in the cluster have experienced a disaster

❗ **IMPORTANT:** MSCS can be recovered using any disaster recovery method except for Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery. All specifics, limitations and requirements pertaining to a particular disaster recovery method you are going to use also apply for the disaster recovery of a MSCS. For details on supported operating systems, see the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

All prerequisites for disaster recovery (that is, consistent and up-to-date backup, updated SRD file, all faulty hardware replaced...) must be met to recover MSCS.

Consistent backup for MSCS should include (in the same backup session):

- all nodes
- administrative virtual server (defined by the administrator)
- if Data Protector is configured as a cluster aware application, Cell Manager virtual server and IDB.

### Disaster recovery of a secondary node

This is the basic scenario for disaster recovery of a MSCS. The following must be true in addition to other prerequisites for disaster recovery:

- at least one of the cluster nodes is functioning properly
- the cluster service is running on that node
- all physical disk resources must be online (that is, owned by the cluster)
- all normal cluster functionality is available (the cluster administration group is online)
- the Cell Manager is online

In this case, the disaster recovery of a cluster node is the same as the disaster recovery of a Data Protector client. You should follow the instructions for the specific disaster recovery method that you will use to restore the secondary node.

**NOTE:** Only local disks are restored, because all shared disks are online and owned by the working node(s) during recovery and locked.

After the secondary node has been recovered, it will join the cluster after boot.

You can restore the MSCS database after all nodes have been recovered and have joined the cluster to ensure its coherency. The MSCS database is part of the CONFIGURATION on Windows. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "restore of configuration objects".

## Disaster recovery of the primary node

In this case all nodes in the MSCS are unavailable and the cluster service is not running.

The following must be true in addition to other prerequisites for disaster recovery:

- the primary node must have write access to the quorum disk (the quorum disk should not be locked)
- the primary node must have write access to all IDB volumes, when recovering the Cell Manager
- all other nodes must be shut down until all physical disk resources are online

In this case, restore the primary node with the quorum disk first. The IDB has to be restored as well if the Cell Manager has been installed in the cluster. Optionally you can restore the MSCS database. After the primary node has been restored, you can restore all remaining nodes.

---


**NOTE:** The MSCS service uses a hard disk signature written into the MBR of every hard disk to identify physical disks. If the shared cluster disks have been replaced, this means that the disk signatures were changed during Phase 1 of disaster recovery. As a consequence, the Cluster Service will not recognize the replaced disks as valid cluster resources, and cluster groups depending on those resources will fail. For more information, see [“Restoring hard disk signatures on Windows” \(page 67\)](#).

---

Perform the following steps to restore the primary node:

1. Perform disaster recovery of the primary node (including the quorum disk).
  - Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery: All user and application data on the quorum disk will be restored automatically by the `drstart` command. (`-full_clus` option)
  - EADR and OBDR: When you are asked to select the scope of recovery, select **Full with Shared Volumes** to restore quorum disk.
  - Automated System Recovery: All user and application data on the quorum disk will be automatically restored.
2. Restart the system.
3. Restore the cluster database. MSCS database is part of the CONFIGURATION on Windows. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “restore of configuration objects”.

---

 **TIP:** To enable automatic restore of all shared disk volumes in the MSCS using OBDR method, move all volumes temporarily to the node for which you are preparing OBDR boot tape. It is namely impossible to collect enough information to configure the disk in Phase 1 for shared disk volumes that are locked by another node.

---

**NOTE:** The MSCS service must be running in order to be able to restore the MSCS database. Therefore it cannot be restored automatically during Phase 2 of disaster recovery. However, the cluster database can be restored at the end of Phase 2 using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

---

4. Make the IDB consistent if you are recovering a Cell Manager. See [“Making IDB consistent \(all methods\)” \(page 69\)](#).
5. The quorum and IDB volumes are restored. All other volumes are left intact and are claimed by the recovered primary node if they are not corrupted.

If they are corrupted you have to:

  - a. disable the cluster service and cluster disk driver (the steps required to do so are described in MSDN Q176970)
  - b. restart the system
  - c. reestablish the previous storage structure

- d. enable the cluster disk driver and cluster service
  - e. restart the system
  - f. restore user and application data
6. Restore the remaining nodes. See [“Disaster recovery of a secondary node”](#) (page 65).

### Merging P1S files of all nodes for EADR

Another step is required for EADR after backup has been performed. It is impossible to collect enough information to configure the disk in Phase 1 for shared disk volumes that are locked by another node during backup. This information is necessary to enable the restore of all shared cluster volumes. To include information on shared cluster volumes in the P1S files for all nodes in the cluster, do one of the following:

- After a full client backup has been performed, merge the information on shared cluster volumes in the P1S files for all nodes in the cluster, so that the P1S file of each node contains information on the shared cluster volumes configuration.
- Move all shared cluster volumes temporarily to the node which you are going to back up. This way all required information about all shared cluster volumes can be collected, but only that node can be the primary node.

To merge the P1S files of all nodes, execute the `merge.exe` command from the `Data_Protector_home\bin\drim\bin`:

```
merge plsA_path ... plsX_path
```

Where `plsA` is the full path of the first node's P1S file and `plsX` is the full path of the P1S file of the last node in the MSCS. Merged P1S files will be saved in the same directory as the source P1S files with the `.merged` appended to their filename (for example, `computer.company.com.merged`). Move the original files to another location and then rename the merged P1S files back to the original name (delete the `.merged` extension).

**Cell Managers on UNIX systems:** The `merge.exe` command works only on Windows systems with the Data Protector Automatic Disaster Recovery component installed. If you are using a UNIX Cell Manager, copy the P1S files to a Windows client which has the Automatic Disaster Recovery component installed and merge the files. Rename the merged P1S files back to the original name and copy them back to the Cell Manager.

### Example

Example for merging P1S files for MSCS with 2 nodes: `merge`

```
Data_Protector_home\Config\server\dr\pls\node1.company.com
```

```
Data_Protector_home\Config\server\dr\pls\node2.company.com.
```

Enclose the path in quotes on Windows if the path contains a space character. The merged files will be `node1.company.com.merged` and `node2.company.com.merged`. Rename the files back to their original names (you will have to rename the source P1S files first): `node1.company.com` and `node2.company.com`.

### Restoring hard disk signatures on Windows

The MSCS service uses a hard disk signature written into the MBR of every hard disk to identify physical disks. If the shared cluster disks have been replaced, this means that the disk signatures were changed during Phase 1 of disaster recovery. As a consequence, the Cluster Service will not recognize the replaced disks as valid cluster resources, and cluster groups depending on those resources will fail. This applies only to the restore of the active node, since shared cluster resources are operational as long as at least one of the nodes is up and running and claims ownership of the resources. This problem does not apply to EADR and OBDR critical disks because the original disk signatures of all EADR/OBDR critical disks are automatically recovered. In case you have replaced any other disks, you will have to restore their hard disk signatures as well.

The most critical shared disk is the cluster quorum resource. If it has been replaced, then the original disk signature must be restored, or the cluster service will not start.

During Phase 2, the MSCS Database is restored into the `\TEMP\ClusterDatabase` directory on the system volume. After the system is restarted, the cluster service will not be running, because the quorum resource will not be identified due to the changed hard disk signature in Phase 1. This can be resolved by running the `clubar` utility (located in the `Data_Protector_home\bin\utilns`), which restores the original hard disk signature. After `clubar` successfully finishes, the cluster service is automatically started.

### Example

At the command prompt type `clubar r c:\temp\ClusterDatabase force q:` to restore a MSCS Database from `c:\temp\ClusterDatabase`.

For more information on `clubar` usage and syntax, see the `clubar.txt` file located in the `Data_Protector_home\bin\utilns`.

If the Data Protector shared disk on the Cell Manager is different from the quorum disk, it has to be restored as well. To restore the signature of the Data Protector shared disk and any other application disk, you should use the `dumpcfg` utility included in a Windows Resource Kit. For details on using `dumpcfg`, run `dumpcfg /?` or see the Windows Resource Kit documentation. For more information on the problems with hard disk signatures on Windows, see MSDN article Q280425.

You can obtain the original hard disk signatures from the SRD files. The signature is a number following the `volume` keyword in the SRD file.

### Example

```
-volume 5666415943 -number 0 -letter C -offslow 32256 -offshigh 0 -lenlow 320430592 -lenhigh 2 -fttype 4 -ftgroup 0 -ftmember 0
-volume 3927615943 -number 0 -letter Q -offslow 320495104 -offshigh 2 -lenlow 1339236864 -lenhigh 0 -fttype 4 -ftgroup 0 -ftmember 0
```

The number following the `-volume` keyword is the signature of the hard disk. In this case the SRD file stores information about a local hard disk (with drive letters C) and quorum disk (with drive letter Q). The signature of the quorum disk is stored only in the SRD file of the active node (at backup time), because it keeps the quorum disk locked and thus prevents other nodes from accessing the quorum disk. It is therefore recommended to always back up the whole cluster, because you need the SRD files of all nodes in the cluster, since only all SRD files together include enough information to configure the disk in Phase 1 for shared disk volumes. Note that a hard disk signature stored in the SRD file is represented as a decimal number, whereas `dumpcfg` requires hexadecimal values.

### Restoring Cluster Shared Volumes and VHD files

You must recover the CSVs in two sessions:

1. Perform a disaster recovery session to restore all volumes. Data Protector will restore the volume information, but not the data in it.
2. Perform a restore of CSVs (including CSV configuration data and VHD files) from the Hyper-V backup session. See the *HP Data Protector Integration Guide for Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service*.

## Automated System Recovery on a Majority Node Set cluster

To perform an Automates System Recovery (ASR) on a Majority Node Set (MNS) cluster, follow these steps:

1. Set up the MNS cluster and install a Data Protector client in it.

Note that it is not possible to install a Cell Manager on a MNS cluster, it is not supported.

2. Perform a filesystem backup, configuration backup, and an IDB backup.
3. Create an ASR disk set.  
For instructions on how to prepare for ASR, preparation to create an ASR set, and recovery using ASR, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "Automated System Recovery".
4. Perform Disaster Recovery on the node.  
For detailed instructions on how to prepare for disaster recovery and so on, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "disaster recovery".

The node is recovered and can join the cluster.

## Restoring the Data Protector Cell Manager specifics

This section explains additional steps for particular methods that should be performed when restoring Windows Cell Manager.

### Making IDB consistent (all methods)

The procedure described in this section should only be used after you have performed the general disaster recovery procedure.

To make the IDB consistent, import the medium with the last backup so that the information about the backed up objects is imported to the database. In order to do so, perform the following steps:

1. Using the Data Protector GUI, recycle the medium or media with the backup of the partitions that remain to be restored for enabling the medium or media to be imported in the IDB. For more information on recycling media, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "recycling media". Sometimes it is not possible to recycle a medium since Data Protector keeps it locked. In such a case stop Data Protector processes and delete the `\tmp` directory by executing commands:  

```
omnisv -stop
```

on Windows Vista and later releases: `del Data_Protector_program_data\tmp\*.*`  
on Windows XP and Windows Server 2003: `del Data_Protector_home\tmp\*.*`  

```
omnisv -start
```
2. Using the Data Protector GUI, export the medium or media with the backup of the partitions that remain to be restored. For more information on exporting media, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "exporting, media".
3. Using the Data Protector GUI, import the medium or media with the backup of the partitions that remain to be restored. For more information on importing media, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "importing, media".

### Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery specifics

Two additional steps are required in Phase 0 if you are recovering Windows Cell Manager using Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery:

- A disaster recovery CD or an USB drive containing the DR OS image or a network bootable image for the Cell Manager should be prepared in advance.

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new backup and prepare a new DR OS image after each hardware, software, or configuration change. This also applies to any network changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.

---

- In addition to the Cell Manager, you should save the updated SRD file of the Cell Manager on several secure locations as a part of the disaster recovery preparation policy, because the SRD file is the only file in Data Protector where information about objects and media is stored,

when IDB is not available. If the SRD file is saved only on the Cell Manager, it is not accessible if the Cell Manager fails. See “Preparation” (page 28).

- If your backups are encrypted, you must save the encryption key to a removable medium before a disaster occurs. If the encryption key is saved only on the Cell Manager, it is not accessible if the Cell Manager fails. Without the encryption key, disaster recovery is not possible.

See “Preparation” (page 28).

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** It is recommended to restrict access to backup media, DR images, SRD files, removable media with encryption keys, disaster recovery CDs, and USB drives storing DR OS data.
- 

### One Button Disaster Recovery specifics

Since the IDB is not available if the Cell Manager has been struck by a disaster, you have to know the location of OBDR bootable medium.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new OBDR backup and prepare a new bootable medium after each hardware, software, or configuration change. This also applies to any network changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.
- 

If your backups are encrypted, you must save the encryption key to a removable medium before a disaster occurs. If the encryption key is saved only on the Cell Manager, it is not accessible if the Cell Manager fails. Without the encryption key, disaster recovery is not possible.

See “Preparation” (page 28).

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** It is recommended to restrict access to backup media and removable media with encryption keys.
- 

### Automated System Recovery specifics

An additional step is required in Phase 0 if you are recovering Windows Cell Manager using Automated System Recovery (ASR):

- ASR diskette for the Cell Manager should be prepared in advance.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new backup and update the ASR diskette after each hardware, software, or configuration change. This also applies to any network changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.

**IMPORTANT:** It is recommended to restrict access to backup media and ASR diskettes.

---

### Restoring Internet Information Server (IIS) specifics

Internet Information Server (IIS) is not supported for disaster recovery. To perform Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery of an IIS, follow these steps (in addition to the steps required for Assisted Manual disaster recovery):

1. Do not install the IIS during clean installation of the system.
2. Stop or uninstall the IIS Admin Service, if it is running.
3. Run the `drstart` command.
4. The IIS Database is restored as a plain file (with the filename `DisasterRecovery`) into the default IIS location (`%SystemRoot%\system32\inetsrv`).

5. After the successful boot, restore the IIS Database using the standard Data Protector restore procedure or IIS Backup/Restore snap-in. Note that this may take quite some time.

## Troubleshooting

1. If any of the IIS dependent services (for example, SMTP, NNTP) do not start automatically, try to start them manually.
2. If this fails, stop the IIS Admin Service and restore the `%SystemRoot%\system32\inetsrv\MetaBase.bin` file, using the overwrite option.

---

**NOTE:** `%SystemRoot%\system32\inetsrv` is the default location of IIS Service. If you have installed the service into other location, use this location as a destination for restore of `MetaBase.bin` file.

---

3. Start the IIS Admin Service and all dependent services.

## Editing the kb.cfg file

Some drivers have their functionality split into several separate files which are all required for the driver to function properly. Sometimes, it is impossible for Data Protector to identify all driver files during the creation of DR image file, if they are not listed in the `kb.cfg` file on a case-by-case basis. In this case, they will not be included in the disaster recovery operating system and as a consequence, some driver or service will not be operational after the boot of the DR OS.

The `kb.cfg` file is located in the `Data_Protector_home\bin\drim\config` directory and stores information on the location of driver files, located under the `%SystemRoot%` directory. When you execute the test plan, make sure that all required services are running and that all drivers are operational after the boot of the OS.

If you want to back up these drivers, add information about dependent files to the `kb.cfg` file in the appropriate format as described in the instructions at the beginning of the `kb.cfg` file.

The easiest way to edit the file is to copy and paste an existing line and just replace it with the relevant information. Note that the path separator is `"/"` (forward slash). White space is ignored except inside quoted-pathname so the depend entry can therefore span several lines. You can also add comment lines that start with a `"#"` (pound) sign and extend to the end of line.

After you finished editing the file, save it to the original location. Then perform another full client backup as described in ["Preparation" \(page 38\)](#), to include the added files in the DR image.

Due to the numerous configurations of system hardware and applications, it makes it impossible to provide an "out of the box" solution for all possible configurations. Therefore you can modify this file to include drivers or other files at your own risk.

Any modification to this file are at your own risk and as such not supported by Hewlett-Packard.

---

**⚠ CAUTION:** Create and execute a test plan to be ensure disaster recovery will succeed after you have edited the `kb.cfg` file.

---

## Recovery using an edited SRD file

Information about backup devices or media stored in the SRD file may be out of date at disaster recovery time. This poses a problem if you are performing an online recovery, because the required information is stored in the IDB on the Cell Manager. However, if you are performing an offline recovery, the information stored in the IDB is not accessible.

For example, a disaster struck not only the Cell Manager, but also a backup device connected to it. If you replace the backup device with a different backup device after the disaster, the information on backup devices stored in the updated SRD file (`recovery.srd`) will be wrong and the recovery will fail. In this case, edit the updated SRD file before performing Phase 2 of disaster recovery to update the wrong information and thus enable a successful recovery.



To edit the SRD file, open it in a text editor and update the information that has changed.



**TIP:** You can display the device configuration information using the `devbra -dev` command.

For example, if the client name of the system you are trying to recover has changed, replace the value of the `-hostoption`. You can also edit the information about the:

- Cell Manager client name (`-cm`).
- Media Agent client (`-mahost`).
- Logical device or drive (library) name (`-dev`).
- Device type (`-devtype`).

For possible `-devtype` option values, see the `sanconf` man page or the *HP Data Protector Command Line Interface Reference*.

- Device SCSI address (`-devaddr`).
- Device policy (`-devpolicy`).

Policy can be defined as 1 (Standalone), 3 (Stacker), 5 (Jukebox), 6 (external control), 8 (Gru DAS exchanger library), 9 (STK Silo medium library) or 10 (SCSI-II Library).

- Robotics SCSI address (`-devioct1`).
- Library slot (`-physloc`)
- Logical library name (`-storname`)

After you have edited the file, save it in Unicode (UTF-16) format to the original location.

### Example

#### **Changing the Media Agent Client**

You performed a disaster recovery backup using a backup device connected to the client `old_mahost.company.com`. At the time of disaster recovery, the same backup device is connected to the client `new_mahost.company.com` with the same SCSI address. To perform a disaster recovery, replace the `-mahost old_mahost.company.com` string in the (updated) SRD file with `-mahost new_mahost.company.com`, before performing the Phase 2 of disaster recovery.

If the backup device has a different SCSI address on the new Media Agent client, modify the value of the `-devaddr` option in the updated SRD file accordingly.

### Example

#### **Changing the backup device and the Media Agent client**

To perform disaster recovery using another device than the one which was used for the backup (Media Agent client is the same), modify the following option values in the updated SRD file: `-dev`, `-devaddr`, `-devtype`, `-devpolicy`, and `-devioct1`. If you are using a library device for restore, modify also the values of the following options in the SRD file: `-physloc`, and `-storname`.

For example, you performed backup for disaster recovery purposes using an HP Ultrium standalone device with the device name `Ultrium_dagnja`, connected to the Media Agent client `dagnja` (Windows systems). However, for the disaster recovery you would like to use an HP Ultrium robotics library with the logical library name `Autolldr_kerala` with drive `Ultrium_kerala` connected to the Media Agent client `kerala` (Linux systems).

First, run the `devbra -dev` command on `kerala` to display the list of configured devices and their configuration information. You will need this information to replace the following option values in the updated SRD file:



```
-dev "Ultrium_dagnja" -devaddr Tape4:1:0:1C -devtype 13 -devpolicy 1  
-mahost dagnja.company.com
```

with something like:

```
-dev "Ultrium_kerala" -devaddr /dev/nst0 -devtype 13 -devpolicy 10  
-devioctl /dev/sg1 -physloc "2-1" -storname "AutoLdr_kerala" -mahost  
kerala.company.com.
```

The procedure on using the edited SRD file for disaster recovery is different for each disaster recovery method. Specific details are explained in the sections pertaining to disaster recovery methods.

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** For security reasons, HP recommends to restrict access to the SRD files.

---

## AMDR/ASR

Perform the following before proceeding with the normal AMDR/ASR recovery procedure:

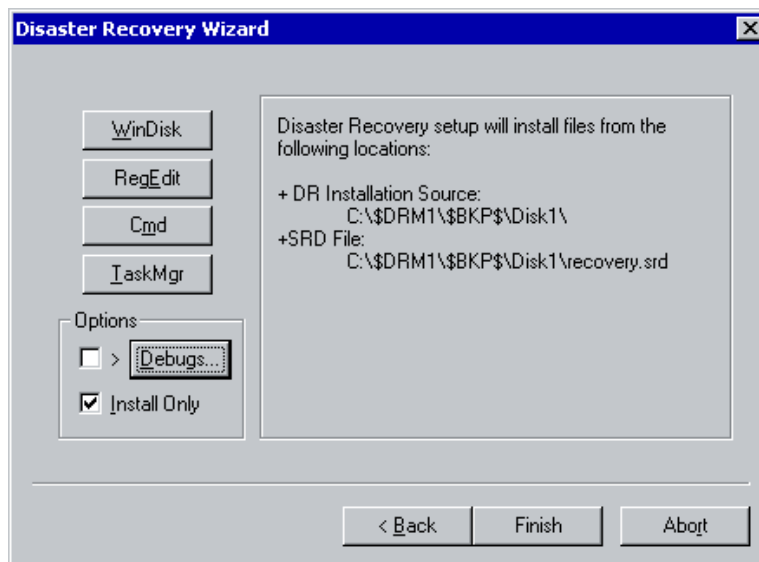
1. Open the `recovery.srd` file (located on the first `drsetup` / ASR diskette) in a text editor and make the necessary changes.
2. Save the file to its original location in Unicode (UTF-16) format.

## EADR/OBDR

Perform the following additional steps before proceeding with the normal EADR/OBDR recovery procedure:

1. When the Disaster Recovery Wizard appears, press any key to stop the wizard during the countdown, select the **Install Only** option and click **Finish**. This option will install only the temporary operating system to the target system and thus finish Phase 1 of disaster recovery. Phase 2 of disaster recovery will not start automatically if the Install only option is selected.

**Figure 8 The Install Only option in the Disaster Recovery wizard**



2. Run Windows Task Manager (press **Alt+Ctrl+Del** and select **Task Manager**).
3. Click **File** and then **New task (Run...)**. Type `notepad c:\DRSYS\system32\OB2DR\bin\recovery.srd` and press **Enter**. The SRD file will be opened in the Notepad.
4. Edit the SRD file. For details on how to edit it, see [“Updating and editing the System Recovery Data \(SRD\)”](#) (page 24).

5. After you have edited and saved the SRD file, run the following command from  
c:\DRSYS\system32\OB2DR\bin:  
omnidr -drimini c:\\$DRIM\$.OB2\OBRecovery.ini
6. Proceed with the next step in the normal EADR/OBDR recovery procedure.

## Updating the ASR diskettes using the CLI interface

Data Protector does not offer a command line interface command to *automatically* create ASR diskettes. However, you can manually update the contents of the first diskette in the ASR set by executing the `omnisrdupdate` command. Insert the first diskette from the ASR set in to the floppy disk drive and specify `a:\` as the location, for example:

```
omnisrdupdate -session 10/04/2011-1 -host computer1.com -location a:\  
-asr
```

To *manually* create an ASR diskette, you also need to copy the `DRdisk_number.cab` files from `Data_Protector_home\Depot\DRSetup\Diskdisk_number` folders to the appropriate ASR diskette.

## Unlocking volumes locked with Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption

During the disaster recovery process on Windows Vista and later releases, you can unlock volumes that are encrypted using BitLocker Drive Encryption.

### Limitation

If you do not unlock a volume that is being recovered or if the volume cannot be unlocked (because it is damaged), the volume *is no longer encrypted after disaster recovery*. In such circumstances, you need to encrypt the volume again.

Note that the system volume is *always* restored unencrypted.

### Procedure

When the disaster recovery module detects an encrypted volume, you are prompted to unlock it.

To unlock the encrypted volume, perform the following:

1. Click **Yes** to start the Unlocker wizard. Note that if you click **No**, the encrypted volumes will remain locked.
2. In the Select Locked Volumes page, the detected encrypted volumes are listed. Select the volumes you want to unlock and then click **Next**.
3. In the Unlock Volume pages (one page for each selected volume), you are requested to specify the unlock method. The following unlock methods are available:
  - Password (*available only on Windows 7 and later releases*)  
A string of characters that was used when you encrypted the volume.
  - Passphrase  
A string of characters longer than the usual password that you used when you encrypted the volume.
  - Recovery key  
A special hidden key you created on each volume that you encrypted. The recovery key has a `BEK` extension, it is saved in the recovery key text file. You can click **Browse** to locate the recovery key file.

Type the requested information in the text box and then click **Next**.

4. Check whether the volumes were unlocked successfully and then click **Finish**.
- 

**NOTE:** If the unlocking process failed, you can review the error information and retry or skip the unlocking procedure.

---

---

## 4 Disaster recovery for UNIX systems

### Manual disaster recovery of an HP-UX client

This section explains the procedure that should be used to recover an HP-UX client from a disaster. The procedure is based on the Ignite-UX product; an application primarily developed for HP-UX system installation and configuration tasks, which offers (in addition to a powerful interface for the system administration) preparation and recovery of the system from a disaster.

While Ignite-UX is focused on the disaster recovery of the target client (Phase 1 and Phase 2), Data Protector has to be used to restore the user and application data in order to complete the Phase 3 of disaster recovery.

---

**NOTE:** This section does not cover the full functionality of Ignite-UX. For detailed information, see the *Ignite-UX administration guide*.

---

#### Overview

Ignite-UX offers 2 different approaches to prepare a system for and recover a system from a disaster:

- Using custom installation medium (Golden Image)
- Using system recovery tools (**make\_tape\_recovery**, **make\_net\_recovery**)

While the usage of Golden Image is most suitable for IT environments with a large number of basically identical hardware configurations and OS releases, the usage of the system recovery tools supports the creation of recovery archives, which are customized for your individual systems.

Both methods allow the creation of bootable installation media like DDS-Tapes or CD's. Using these media, the system administrator is able to perform a local disaster recovery directly from the system console of the failed client. In addition, both methods can also be used to run a network based recovery of the client by assigning the failed client a suitable Golden Image or the previously created "recovery archive". In this case, the client boots directly from the Ignite Server and runs the installation from the assigned depot, which has to be located on a NFS share on your network.

Use Ignite-UX GUI where it is supported.

### Using custom installation medium

#### Overview

Large IT environments often consist of a large number of systems that are based on identical hardware and software. Installation of OS, applications and required patches can be significantly reduced if a complete snapshot of the installed system is used to install other systems. Ignite-UX includes a feature, which allows you to modify parameters like networking or filesystem settings and add software like Data Protector to the image (with Ignite-UX command `make_config`) before you assign such a Golden Image to another system. This feature can thus be used to recover a system from a disaster.

The general steps using a custom installation medium are:

1. **Phase 0**
  - a. Create a Golden Image of a client system.
2. **Phase 1 and 2**

- b. Replace the faulty disk with a replacement disk.
- c. Boot the HP-UX client from the Ignite-UX server and configure the network.
- d. Install the Golden Image from the Ignite-UX server.

### 3. Phase 3

- a. Use the standard Data Protector restore procedure to restore user and application data.

## Preparation

The following steps explain how to create a Golden Image of a client system on a target system, which will share the image via NFS to your network. In this example, Data Protector client is already installed on the client system and will be included in the “Golden Image” without additional configuration steps.

1. Copy the `/opt/ignite/data/scripts/make_sys_image` file from your Ignite-UX Server into a temporary directory on the client system.
2. Run the following command on the client node to create a compressed image of the client on another system: `make_sys_image -ddirectory of the archive -nname of the archive.gz -s IP address of the target system`

This command will create a gzipped file depot in the specified directory on the system defined with the `-d` and `-s` options. Make sure that your HP-UX client has granted a password-less access to the target system (an entry in the `.rhosts` file with the name of the client system on the target system) otherwise the command will fail.

3. Add the target directory to the `/etc/exports` directory on the target system and export the directory on the target server (`exportfs -av`).
4. On the Configuring Ignite-UX server, copy the archive template file `core.cfg` to `archive_name.cfg`: `cp /opt/ignite/data/examples/core.cfg /var/opt/ignite/data/OS_Release/archive_name.cfg`

### Example

```
cp /opt/ignite/data/examples/core.cfg
/var/opt/ignite/data/Rel_B.11.31/archive_HPUX11_31_DP70_CL.cfg
```

5. Check and change the following parameters in the copied configuration file:
  - In the `sw_source` section:
 

```
load_order = 0
source_format = archive
source_type="NET"
# change_media=FALSE
post_load_script = "/opt/ignite/data/scripts/os_arch_post_1"
post_config_script =
"/opt/ignite/data/scripts/os_arch_post_c"
nfs_source = "IP Target System:Full Path"
```
  - In the matching OS archive section:
 

```
archive_path = "archive_name.gz"
```
6. Determine the “impacts” entries by running the command `archive_impact` on your image file and copy the output in the same “OS archive” section of your configuration file:
 

```
/opt/ignite/lbin/archive_impact -t -g archive_name.gz
```

### Example

```
/opt/ignite/lbin/archive_impact -t -g
/image/archive_HPUX11_31_DP70_CL.gz
impacts = "/" 506Kb
impacts = "/.root" 32Kb
impacts = "/dev" 12Kb
```

```

impacts = "/etc" 26275Kb
impacts = "/opt" 827022Kb
impacts = "/sbin" 35124Kb
impacts = "/stand" 1116Kb
impacts = "/tcadm" 1Kb
impacts = "/usr" 729579Kb
impacts = "/var" 254639Kb

```

7. To make Ignite-UX aware of the new created depot, add an `cfg` entry to the `/var/opt/ignite/INDEX` file with the following layout:

```

cfg "This_configuration_name" {
description "Description of this configuration"
"/opt/ignite/data/OS/config"
"/var/opt/ignite/data/OS/ archive_name.cfg"
}

```

### Example

```

cfg "HPUX11_31_DP70_Client" {
description "HPUX 11.i OS incl Patches and DP70 Client"
"/opt/ignite/data/Rel_B.11.31/config"
"/var/opt/ignite/data/Rel_B.11.31/archive_HPUX11_31_DP70_CL.cfg"
"
}

```

8. Make sure that one or more IP addresses reserved for starting up clients are configured in the `/etc/opt/ignite/inst1_boottab` file. The number of IP addresses is equal to the number of parallel booting clients.

After the above described procedure is completed, you have a Golden Image of an HP-UX client (with a specific hardware and software configuration), which can be used to recover any client of a similar layout.

Repeat these steps to create a Golden Image for all systems with different hardware and software configuration.

---

**NOTE:** Ignite-UX enables you to create a bootable tape or CD based on the created Golden Image. For more information, see the *Ignite-UX administration guide*.

---

## Recovery

To recover an HP-UX client by applying the Golden Image, which is located on a NFS share on your network, perform the following steps:

1. *On the Client System:*
  - a. Replace the faulty hardware.
  - b. Boot the HP-UX client from the Ignite-UX server: `boot lan.IP-address Ignite-UX serverinstall`.
  - c. Select **Install HP-UX** when the Welcome to Ignite-UX screen appears.
  - d. Choose **Remote graphical interface running on the Ignite-UX server** from the UI Option screen.
  - e. Respond to the Network configuration dialog.
  - f. The system is now prepared for a remote Ignite-UX Server controlled installation.
2. *On the Ignite-UX Server:*
  - a. Right click the **client** icon in the Ignite-UX GUI and select **Install Client – New Install**.
  - b. Select the Golden Image you want to install, check the settings (network, filesystem, time zone,...) and click the **Go!** button.

- c. You can check the installation progress by right clicking the **client** icon and choosing **Client Status...**
- d. After the installation has finished, restore additional user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

## Using system recovery tools

### Overview

The usage of the system recovery tools, bundled with the Ignite-UX, enables you a fast and easy recovery from a disk failure. The recovery archive of system recovery tools includes only essential HP-UX directories. However, it is possible to include other files and directories (for example, additional volume groups or the Data Protector files and directories) in the archive to speed up the recovery process.

`make_tape_recovery` creates a bootable recovery (installation) tape, customized for your system and enables you unattended disaster recovery by connecting the backup device directly to the target system and starting up the target system from the bootable recovery tape. The backup device has to be locally connected to the client during the creation of the archive and recovery of the client.

`make_net_recovery` allows you to create a recovery archive over the network onto the Ignite-UX server or any other specified system. The target system can be recovered across subnets after starting up either from a bootable tape created by the Ignite-UX `make_boot_tape` command or the system boots directly from the Ignite-UX server. Starting up directly from the Ignite-UX server can be automated with the Ignite-UX `bootsys` command or interactively specified on the boot console.

The general steps using system recovery tools are:

1. **Phase 0**
  - a. Create a recovery archive of an HP-UX client using the Ignite-UX GUI on the Ignite-UX server.
2. **Phase 1 and 2**
  - a. Replace the faulty disk with a replacement disk.
  - b. For local restore, boot from the prepared recovery tape.
  - c. In case of a local restore, the recovery process starts automatically.  
For network restore, boot from the Ignite-UX client and configure the network and UI.  
In case of a network restore, install the Golden Image from the Ignite-UX server.
3. **Phase 3**
  - a. Use the standard Data Protector restore procedure to restore user and application data.

### Preparation

The easiest way to create a recovery archive of an HP-UX client is to use the Ignite-UX GUI on the Ignite-UX server. All GUI commands can also be executed from the command line. For more information, see the *Ignite-UX administration guide*.

### Prerequisites

Before you are able to prepare your system for disaster, the Ignite-UX fileset has to be installed on the client in order to enable the Ignite-UX server to communicate with the client. Make sure that the revisions of the Ignite-UX fileset on the Ignite-UX server and on the client are the same. The simplest way to keep everything consistent is to install Ignite-UX from a depot build on the Ignite-UX server. This depot can be constructed by running the following command on the Ignite-UX server:

```
pkg_rec_depot -f
```

This creates an Ignite-UX depot under `/var/opt/ignite/depots/recovery_cmds`, which can be specified as a source directory by `swinstall` on the client for the Ignite-UX software installation.

After you have installed Ignite-UX on the client node, you can use the GUI on the Ignite-UX server to create recovery archives using `make_net_recovery` or `make_tape_recovery`.

### Creating an archive using `make_tape_recovery`

Perform the following steps to create an archive using `make_tape_recovery`:

1. Make sure that a backup device is connected to the HP-UX client.
2. Start the Ignite-UX GUI by executing the following command: `/opt/ignite/bin/ignite &`
3. Right click the **client** icon and select **Create Tape Recovery Archive**.
4. Select a tape device, if more than one device is connected to the HP-UX client.
5. Select the volume groups you want to include into the archive.
6. The tape creation process will now begin. Check the status and log file on the Ignite-UX server by right clicking the **client** icon and selecting **Client Status**.

---

**NOTE:** Ignite-UX recommends the usage of 90m DDS1 backup tapes to ensure that the tape will work with all DDS with any DDS drive.

---

### Creating an archive using `make_net_recovery`

The procedure for creating a recovery archive using `make_net_recovery` is almost the same as using `make_tape_recovery`. The advantage is that there is no need for a locally attached backup device, as the recovery archive is stored on the Ignite-UX server by default.

1. Start the Ignite-UX GUI by executing the following command: `/opt/ignite/bin/ignite &`
2. Right click the **client** icon and select **Create Network Recovery Archive**.
3. Select the destination system and directory. Make sure that there is enough space to store the compressed archive.
4. Select the volume groups you want to include into the archive.
5. The archive creation process will now begin. Check the status and log file on the Ignite-UX server by right clicking the **client** icon and selecting **Client Status**.

---

**NOTE:** Ignite-UX allows you to create bootable archive tape out of the compressed archive file. See the chapter *Create a Bootable Archive Tape via the Network* in the *Ignite-UX Administration Guide*.

---

## Recovery

### Recovery from the backup tape

To recover a system from a disaster using the bootable tape created by `make_tape_recovery` follow the steps below:

1. Replace the faulty hardware.
2. Make sure that the tape device is locally connected to the affected HP-UX client and insert the medium with the archive you want to restore.
3. Boot from the prepared recovery tape. To do so, type in `SEARCH` at the boot admin menu to get a list of all available boot devices. Determine which one is the tape drive and type in the boot command: `boot hardware_path` or `boot Pnumber`.
4. The recovery process starts automatically.
5. After the recovery has completed successfully, restore additional user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.



## Recovery from the network

To recover an HP-UX client from a disaster via the network, follow the instructions on how to perform recovery with a Golden Image. Make sure you have selected the desired archive for the installation.

- **On the Client:**
  1. Replace the faulty hardware.
  2. Boot the HP-UX client from the Ignite-UX server:  

```
boot lan.IP-address Ignite-UX serverinstall
```
  3. Select **Install HP-UX** from the Welcome to Ignite-UX screen.
  4. Choose **Remote graphical interface running on the Ignite-UX server** on the UI Option screen.
  5. Respond to the Network configuration dialog.
  6. The system is now prepared for a remote installation controlled from the Ignite-UX Server.
- **On the Ignite-UX Server:**
  1. Right click the **client** icon within the Ignite-UX GUI and select **Install Client – New Install**.
  2. Under Configurations: select the **Recovery Archive** you want to install, check the settings (network, filesystem, time zone,...) and click the **Go!** button.
  3. You can check the installation progress by right clicking the **client** icon and choosing **Client Status...**
  4. After the recovery has completed successfully, restore additional user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

## Disk delivery disaster recovery of a UNIX client

To perform a disk delivery disaster recovery of a UNIX client, connect a bootable disk that contains a minimal OS installation and Data Protector Disk Agent to the affected system. The administrator has to ensure (before the disaster) that enough data has been collected to correctly format and partition the disk.

For details on supported operating systems, see the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

## Overview

Disk Delivery of a UNIX client is performed using an auxiliary disk (which can be carried around), with a minimal operating system with networking and a Data Protector agent installed on it.

The general steps using an auxiliary disk for a UNIX client are:

1. **Phase 0**
  - a. Perform a full client backup and IDB backup (Cell Manager only).
  - b. Create an auxiliary disk.
2. **Phase 1**
  - a. Replace the faulty disk with a replacement disk, connect the auxiliary disk to the target system and restart the system with the minimal operating system installed on the auxiliary disk.
  - b. Manually re-partition the replacement disk and re-establish the storage structure and make the replacement disk bootable.
3. **Phase 2**

- a. Use the standard Data Protector restore procedure to restore the boot disk of the original system onto the replacement disk (use the Restore into option).
- b. Shut down the system and remove the auxiliary disk. You do not need to shut down the system if you are using a hot-swappable hard disk drive.
- c. Restart the system.

#### 4. Phase 3

- a. Use the standard Data Protector restore procedure to restore user and application data.

## Limitations

- This description does not cover the recovery of a cluster environment. Depending on the configuration of the cluster environment, additional steps and modification to the environment are necessary.
- RAID is not supported.
- Auxiliary disk should be prepared on a system of the same hardware class as the target system.

## Preparation

Preparation for this disaster recovery method should be performed on several levels: gathering the information for your backup specification, preparing the disk, preparing your backup specification (pre-exec), and executing the backup. All of these preparatory steps are necessary before executing disaster recovery of the client.

This section provides a list of items that need to be executed for each target system at backup time, in order to perform successful disaster recovery. If the information is collected as part of a pre-exec command, it is important to document the location of these files in the Disaster Recovery plan so that the information can be found once disaster strikes. Also version administration (there is a collection of the “auxiliary information” per backup) has to be considered.

- If the system that will be backed up has application processes active at low run-levels, establish a state of *minimal activity* (modified *init 1 run-level*) and enter the single user mode to prevent errors after recovery (see “[Consistent and relevant backup](#)” (page 23)). For details, consult your operating system documentation.

### **HP-UX systems:**

#### Example

1. Move some kill links from `/sbin/rc1.d` to `/sbin/rc0.d` and complement the changes for the boot-up section. The kill links include the basic services that would otherwise be suspended by moving to run-level 1, and they are needed for the backup. For an example, see “[Moving kill links on HP-UX 11.x](#)” (page 115).
2. Ensure that `rpcd` is configured on the system (configure the parameter `RPCD=1` within the file `/etc/rc.config.d/dce`).

This prepares the system so that it enters the state of minimal activity. The state can be characterized as follows:

- `Init-1` (`FS_mounted`, `hostname_set`, `date_set`, `syncer_running`)
- Network must be running
- The following processes should also be running: `inetd`, `rpcd`, `swagentd`

## **Solaris:**

### Example

1. Move the `rpc` kill link from `/etc/rc1.d` to `/etc/rc0.d` and complement the change for the boot-up section. The kill links include the basic services that would otherwise be suspended by moving to run-level 1, and they are needed for the backup.
2. Ensure that `rpcbind` is configured on the system.

This prepares the system so that it enters the state of minimal activity. The state can be characterized as follows:

- `Init 1`
- Network must be running
- The following processes should also be running: `inetd`, `rpcbind`.

## **Tru64:**

### Example

1. If the system is powered down, boot up the system and enter the System Reference Manual (SRM) console (the firmware console).
2. Execute the following command from the SRM console to enter the single user mode:
  - `boot -fl s` to boot using already generated `vmunix` file
  - `boot -fi genvmunix -fl s` to boot into the single user mode with the generic kernel.
3. If the system is already powered up and running, change from the current run-level to single-user mode by executing the following command: `init s`

## **AIX systems:**

No action is required, because the `alt_disk_install` command, used to prepare the auxiliary disk, ensures consistent disk image without entering the state of minimal system activity.

- If you want to work with the auxiliary boot disk, you have to prepare it. Only one bootable auxiliary disk is required per site and platform. This disk has to contain the operating system and network configuration, and has to be bootable.
- Provide a Pre-exec script that performs the following:
  - Physical and logical storage structure of the storage
  - Current logical volume structure (for example, on HP-UX, using `vgcfgbackup` and `vgdisplay -v`)
  - ServiceGuard configuration data, disk-mirroring, striping
  - Filesystems and mountpoints overview (for example, on HP-UX, using `bdf` or copy of `/etc/fstab`)
  - System paging space information, for example, on HP-UX, using the output of the `swapinfo` command
  - I/O-structure overview (for example, on HP-UX, using `ioscan -fun` and `ioscan -fkn`)
  - Client network settings

Collects all the necessary information about the environment and puts it in an available location in case of a disaster recovery. It is suggested to put it onto a different system which can be accessed easily. The information should cover:

- An emergency copy of the data can also be put into the backup itself. If done so, the information has to then be extracted prior to the actual recovery.
  - Consider logging out all users from the system.
  - Shut down all applications, unless the application data gets backed up separately, for example, using online database backup.
  - You may want to restrict network access to the system, so that no one can log on to the system while the backup is running (for example, on HP-UX, overwrite `inetd.sec` and use `inetd -c`).
  - If needed, enter the state of minimal system activity (for example, on HP-UX, use `sbin/init 1; wait 60; check if run-level 1 is reached`). Note that this is a modified "init 1" state.
- Provide a post-exec script that elevates the system to the standard run-level, restarts applications, and so on.
  - Setup a backup specification for the client on the Data Protector Cell Manager. It should include all the discs (with disc discovery) and include the pre- and post-exec scripts.
  - Execute this backup procedure and repeat it on a regular basis, or at least at every major system configuration change, especially any change in the logical volume structure (for example, using LVM on HP-UX).

## Recovery

This section describes how to restore a system to the state when the backup was done. You will need the following to successfully perform a Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery:

- A new hard disk to replace your affected disk.
- An auxiliary disk containing the relevant operating system and the Data Protector agents.
- A successful full backup of the client that you want to recover.

The following steps need to be performed:

1. Replace the faulty disk with a new disk of comparable size.
2. Attach the auxiliary disk (which contains the relevant operating system and the Data Protector client) to the system and make it the boot device.
3. Boot from the auxiliary operating system.
4. Reconstruct the logical volume structure if applicable (for example, using LVM on HP-UX). Use the saved data for the non-root volume groups (for example, with `vgcfgrestore` or SAM on HP-UX).
5. Additionally, the root volume group to be restored has to be created on the repaired disk (for example, using `vgimport` on HP-UX). It will not look like a root volume group during the restore process. This is because the OS from the auxiliary disk will be running. For more information on `vgimport`, see its man page.
6. Make the new disk bootable.
7. Reconstruct any other storage structures like mirror, striping, service guard, and so on from the data saved on a secondary storage device during backup.
8. Create the filesystems and mount them as required by the data from the backup; use similar but not the original mountpoint names (like `/etc_restore` for `/etc`, and so on).
9. Remove any files in the mountpoints to be restored, they must be clean.
10. Start the Data Protector GUI and open a connection to the Cell Manager. Import the system with the auxiliary disk into the cell.

11. Select the version from which you want to restore. First list all the required media for the restore and make sure they are available. Restore all the required mountpoints including the (future) root-volume to the system, using the option **Restore As** *new\_mountpoint*. The root-volume from the backup is restored to the root-volume on the repaired disk. Nothing is restored to the currently-running auxiliary operating system on the auxiliary disk.
12. Shut down the system that was just restored.
13. Disconnect the auxiliary disk from the system.
14. Restart the system from the new (or repaired) disk.

---

**NOTE:** Instead of using an auxiliary disk, the new disk can also be temporarily connected to a client that has to have a Disk Agent installed. After being restored, it can be connected to the faulty system and booted.

---

## Manual disaster recovery of a UNIX Cell Manager

Manual Disaster Recovery is a basic method that involves recovering the system by reinstalling it in the same way as it was initially installed. In addition, Data Protector is used to then restore all files, including the operating system.

### Overview

The general procedure for a manual disaster recovery of a UNIX Cell Manager is:

1. **Phase 0**
  - a. Perform a full client backup and IDB backup.
  - b. Collect information on the original system to enable installation and configuration of DR OS.
2. **Phase 1:**
  - a. Replace the faulty hardware.
  - b. Manually re-partition the disk and re-establish the storage structure.
  - c. Reinstall the operating system.
  - d. Reinstall patches.
3. **Phase 2**
  - a. Reinstall the Data Protector Cell Manager.
  - b. Restore the latest backup of the IDB to simplify the restore of all other files from media.
  - c. Replace the Data Protector configuration information (*/etc/opt/omni*) with the latest Data Protector configuration information from the backup to re-create the previous configuration.
4. **Phase 3**
  - a. Use Data Protector standard restore procedure to restore user and application data.
  - b. Restart the system.

### Limitation

For details on supported operating systems, see the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

This description does not cover the recovery of a cluster environment. Depending on the configuration of the cluster environment, additional steps and modification to the environment are necessary.

### Preparation

Perform the same preparatory steps without the steps pertaining to the auxiliary disk, as for Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery of an HP-UX or Solaris client. See “Preparation” (page 82). In addition to completing those steps, you also have to complete the following:

1. The IDB has to be backed up regularly, ideally in a separate backup specification, scheduled after the backup of the Cell Manager.
2. The IDB and configuration backup must run to a specific device located on the Cell Manager system, to make the administrator aware that the medium in the device contains the most recent version of the IDB.

## Recovery

Use the following method to recover your UNIX Cell Manager.

### Prerequisites

You will need the following to successfully perform a disaster recovery:

- Media containing the last valid known backup of the root partition of the Cell Manager and IDB.
- A device connected to the Cell Manager.

The following steps need to be performed to recover a Cell Manager:

1. Replace the affected disk.
2. Boot your system from the installation media of your operating system.
3. Reinstall the operating system. For instructions, see your system administrator's manual. During the installation, using the data gathered during the preparation phase (pre-exec script), re-create and configure the physical and logical storage structure of the storage, logical volume structure, filesystem and mountpoints, network settings and other.
4. Reinstall the Data Protector on the Cell Manager.
5. Restore the latest backup of your database and `/etc/opt/omni` to a temporary directory. This simplifies the restore of all other files from media.

---

**NOTE:** You cannot restore the database directly. For instructions, see the *HP Data Protector Help*. This includes stopping all Data Protector processes with the `omnisv -stop` command. This ensures that no files will be in use.

---

6. Remove the `/etc/opt/omni` directory and replace it with the `/etc/opt/omni` directory from the temporary area. This re-creates the previous configuration.
7. Start Data Protector processes with the `omnisv -start` command.
8. Start the Data Protector user interface and restore all the files used from your backup.
9. Restart the system.

Your Cell Manager should now be successfully recovered.

## Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery of a Linux system

Data Protector offers an enhanced disaster recovery procedure for Linux Cell Manager and clients. For details on supported operating systems, see the latest support matrices on <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

EADR collects all relevant environment data automatically at backup time. During a full backup of the entire client system, data required for the temporary DR OS setup and configuration is packed in a single large **DR OS image file** and stored on the backup tape (and optionally on the Cell Manager) for each backed up client in the cell.

In addition to this image file, a **Phase 1 Startup file (P1S file)**, required for correct formatting and partitioning of the disk is stored on a backup medium and on the Cell Manager. When a disaster occurs, the Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery wizard is used to restore the DR OS image from the backup medium (if it has not been saved on the Cell Manager during the full backup) and convert it into a **disaster recovery CD ISO image**. The CD ISO image can be recorded on a CD using any CD burning tool and used to boot the target system.

Data Protector then automatically runs the DR OS, formats and partitions the disks, and finally recovers the original system with Data Protector as it was at the time of the backup.

- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** It is recommended to restrict access to backup media, DR images, SRD files, and disaster recovery CDs.

## Overview

The general steps using the Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery method for a Linux client are:

### 1. Phase 0

- a. Perform a full backup of the entire client system. If you are backing up a Cell Manager, include the Internal Data Base.
- b. Use the Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery wizard to prepare a disaster recovery CD ISO image (DR ISO image) from the DR OS image file of the affected system and burn it on a CD. If the DR OS image has not been saved on the Cell Manager during the full backup, the Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery wizard will restore it from the backup medium.

- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** You need to perform a new backup and prepare a new DR CD after each hardware, software, or configuration change. This also applies to any network changes, such as a change of IP address or DNS server.

- c. If the full client backup was encrypted, store the encryption key on a removable medium so that it is available for disaster recovery. You will need the key for a Cell Manager recovery or if the connection to the Cell Manager cannot be established.

### 2. Phase 1

- a. Replace the faulty hardware.
- b. Boot the target system from the disaster recovery CD and select the scope of recovery. This is a completely unattended recovery.

### 3. Phase 2

- a. Critical volumes (the boot and the root volumes, and the volumes containing the Data Protector installation and configuration) are automatically restored.

### 4. Phase 3

- a. Use the standard Data Protector restore procedure to restore user and application data.

- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Prepare a disaster recovery CD in advance for any critical systems that must be restored first (especially DNS servers, Cell Managers, Media Agent clients, file servers, and so on.).

Prepare removable media containing encryption keys in advance for Cell Manager recovery.

The following sections explain the limitations, preparation steps, and the recovery procedure that pertains to EADR of the Linux clients. See also [“Advanced recovery tasks on Linux systems” \(page 98\)](#).

## Requirements

Before selecting this method of disaster recovery, consider the following requirements and limitations:

- The Data Protector Automatic Disaster Recovery component must be installed on systems for which you want to enable recovery using this method and on systems where the DR CD ISO image will be prepared. For details, see the *HP Data Protector Installation and Licensing Guide*.
- The hardware configuration of the target system must be the same as of the original system. This includes SCSI BIOS settings (sector remapping).
- Replacement disks have to be attached to the same host bus adapter on the same bus.

- During the EADR preparation, the volume on which Data Protector is installed should have at least 800 MB of temporary free space. This space is required to create a temporary image.
- The system's BIOS must support bootable CD extensions as defined in the El-Torito standard and read/write access to hard disk drive using LBA addressing via INT13h function XXh. The BIOS options can either be checked in the user's manuals of the system or by inspecting the system setup before the boot.
- In a SAN boot configuration, make sure the following items on the target system are identical to the ones on the original system:
  - The local HBA's BIOS parameters
  - LUN numbers of the SAN disks
- In multipath SAN disk configurations, the LUNs and WWIDs of the target system disks must be identical to the ones on the original system.

## Limitations

- You must create DR ISO images for Linux systems on Linux systems. You cannot create DR ISO images for on other systems (Windows, HP-UX, Solaris). The limitation does not apply for updating the SRD file or other tasks.
- The new disk must be the same size or bigger than the affected disk. If it is larger than the original disk, the difference will remain unallocated.
- If you have a mount point with the name `CONFIGURATION` and it contains the directory `SystemRecoveryData`, data in the directory `SystemRecoveryData` will not be backed up.
- Do not mount disks using the disk ID, because the ID is unique and depends on the disk serial number. In case of a disaster, the disk may be replaced and the new disk will have a new ID. As a result, the disaster recovery fails.
- Recovery of a SAN boot configuration is supported only for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11.x systems.

## Preparation

Before completing the steps listed in this section, see the *HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery Guide* for the general preparation procedure for all disaster recovery methods. See also [“Advanced recovery tasks on Linux systems”](#) (page 98).

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** Prepare for disaster recovery *before* a disaster occurs.

---

### Prerequisites

- Perform a full backup of the entire client (including the `CONFIGURATION` object). If you are backing up a Cell Manager, select also the Internal Database.  
See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “backup, configuration”.

## The DR ISO image file

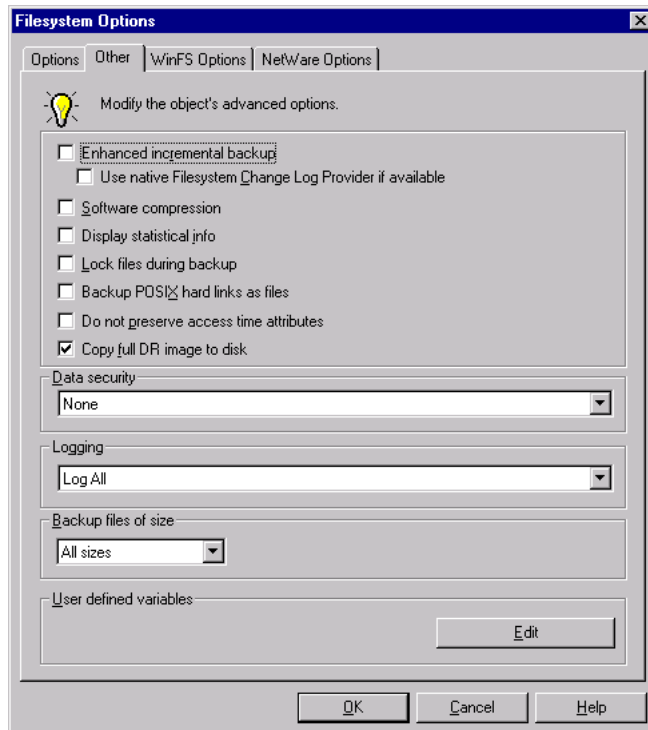
Data required for temporary DR OS installation and configuration (**DR image**) is packed in a single large file and stored on the backup medium and optionally on the Cell Manager during a full backup of the entire client system. If you want to save the full disaster recovery image file to the Cell Manager for all clients in the backup specification, perform the following steps:

1. In the Context List, select **Backup**.
2. In the Scoping pane, expand **Backup Specifications** and then **Filesystem**.



3. Select the backup specification you will use for a full backup of the entire client system. If you have not created it yet, do so. For details, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “creating, backup specifications”.
4. In the Results Area, click **Options**.
5. Under Filesystem Options, click **Advanced**.
6. Click the **Other** tab and select **Copy full DR image to disk**.

**Figure 9 Other options tab**



To copy the DR image files only for particular clients in the backup specification, perform the following steps:

1. In the Context List, select **Backup**.
2. In the Scoping pane, expand the **Backup Specifications** and then **Filesystem**.
3. Select the backup specification you will use for a full backup of the entire client. If you have not created it yet, do so. For details, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “creating, backup specifications”.
4. In the Results Area, click **Backup Object Summary**.
5. Select the client for which you would like to store the DR image file onto the Cell Manager and click **Properties**.
6. Click the **Other** tab and select **Copy full DR image to disk**.

Saving the full DR image to the Cell Manager is useful if you plan to burn the disaster recovery CD on the Cell Manager, because it is much faster to obtain the DR image from the hard disk than to restore it from a backup medium. The DR image file is by default saved on the Cell Manager into the directory `Data_Protector_program_data\Config\Server\dr\pls` (Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012 systems), `Data_Protector_home\Config\Server\dr\pls` (other Windows systems), or `/etc/opt/omni/server/dr/pls` (UNIX systems) with the name `client name.img`. To change the default location, specify a new global option `EADRImpagePath = valid_path` (for example, `EADRImpagePath = /home/images`) in the global options file. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “Global Options File, modifying”.



---

**TIP:** If you do not have enough free disk space in the destination directory, you can create a mount point (Windows systems) or a link to another volume (UNIX systems).

---

## Preparing the encryption keys

For a Cell Manager recovery or an offline client recovery, you must ensure that the encryption keys are available during the disaster recovery by storing them on a removable medium. For a Cell Manager recovery, prepare the removable medium in advance, before the disaster occurs.

The encryption keys are not part of the DR OS image file. During the disaster recovery image creation, the keys are automatically exported to the Cell Manager to the file `Data_Protector_program_data\Config\Server\export\keys\DR-ClientName-keys.csv` (Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012), `Data_Protector_home\Config\Server\export\keys\DR-ClientName-keys.csv` (other Windows systems), or `/var/opt/omni/server/export/keys/DR-ClientName-keys.csv` (UNIX systems), where *ClientName* is the name of the client for which the image is being created.

Ensure that you have the correct encryption key for each backup that is prepared for a disaster recovery.

## The Phase 1 Startup file (P1S)

In addition to the DR image file, a **Phase 1 Startup file (P1S)** is created during full backup. It is saved on backup medium and on the Cell Manager into the directory `Data_Protector_home\Config\Server\dr\p1s` (Windows systems) or `/etc/opt/omni/server/dr/p1s` (UNIX systems) with the filename equal to the hostname (for example, `computer.company.com`). It is a Unicode UTF-8 encoded file that contains information on how to format and partition all disks installed in the system, whereas the updated SRD file contains only system information and data about backup objects and corresponding media.

After a disaster occurs, you can use the EADR wizard to merge DR image, SRD and P1S files with disaster recovery installation into a **disaster recovery CD ISO image**, which can be burned on a CD using any CD burning tool that supports the ISO9660 format. This **disaster recovery CD** can then be used to perform automated disaster recovery.

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** Disaster recovery CD has to be prepared in advance for the Cell Manager.

**IMPORTANT:** It is recommended to restrict access to backup media, DR images, SRD files and disaster recovery CDs due to security reasons.

---

## Preparing DR ISO image

To prepare a DR ISO image, perform the following steps:

1. In the Context List, select **Restore**.
2. Click the **Tasks** navigation tab and select Disaster Recovery.
3. From the drop down list, select the client you would like to prepare the DR ISO image for.
4. Click **Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery** and then **Next**.
5. For each critical object select an appropriate object version and click **Next**.
6. If you have saved the DR image file on the Cell Manager, specify or browse for its location, otherwise click **Restore image file from a backup**. Click **Next**.
7. Select the destination directory where you want to place the DR ISO image (`recovery.iso`).
8. Click **Finish** to exit the wizard and create the DR ISO image.

9. Record the DR ISO image on a CD using a CD recording tool that supports the ISO9660 format.
- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new backup and prepare a new DR CD after each hardware, software or configuration change. This also applies to any network configuration changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.
- 

## Recovery

You need the following to successfully perform a disaster recovery on the affected system:

- A new hard disk to replace your affected disk.
- A successful full backup of the entire client that you want to recover.
- The Data Protector disaster recovery CD.

The following is a step-by-step procedure for performing disaster recovery of a Linux system:

1. Unless you are performing an offline disaster recovery, add an account with the following properties to the Data Protector admin user group on the Cell Manager:
  - Start restore
  - Restore to other clients
  - Restore as root

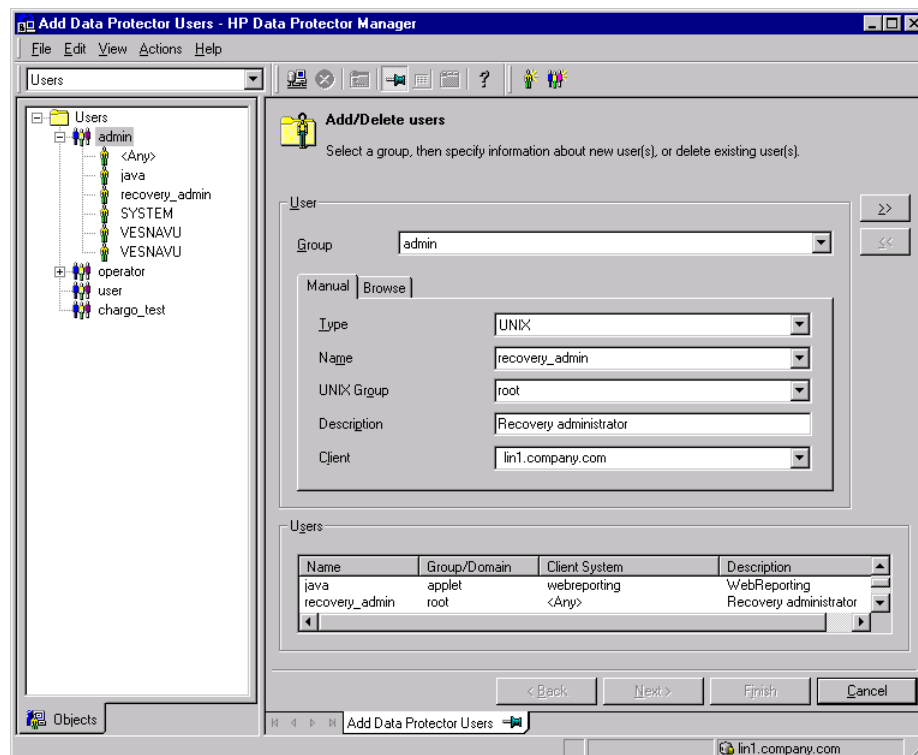
---

**NOTE:** The disaster recovery procedure can only be performed by the *root* user.

---

For more information on adding users, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “adding Data Protector users”.

**Figure 10 Adding a user account**



---

**NOTE:** If you are using encrypted control communication between the clients in a cell, you must add the client to the Security Exceptions list on the Cell Manager before you start the recovery. Unless you are using a local device, the Media Agent client must be added to the Security Exceptions list on the Cell Manager as well.

---

2. Boot the client system from the disaster recovery CD of the original system.
3. Press **Enter** when the following message is displayed: Press Enter to boot from Recovery CD..
4. The DR OS is loaded first into memory and then the scope menu is displayed.  
Select the scope of the recovery. There are four different scopes of recovery and two additional options:
  - **Reboot:** Disaster recovery is not performed and the system is restarted.
  - **Default Recovery:** Recovers the /boot and / (root) volumes and all volumes on which Data Protector installation and configuration files are located (/opt, /etc, and /var). All other disks are not partitioned and formatted and are ready for Phase 3.
  - **Minimal Recovery:** Recovers only the /boot and / (root) volumes.
  - **Full Recovery:** All volumes are recovered, not only the critical ones.
  - **Full with Shared Volumes:** All volumes are recovered, including shared volumes that were locked at backup time.
  - **Run Shell:**  
Runs the Linux shell. You can use it for advanced configuration or recovery tasks.
5. The Disaster Recovery wizard appears. To modify the disaster recovery options, press any key to stop the recovery process during the countdown and modify the options. Select **Proceed With Restore** to continue with the recovery.
6. If the disaster recovery backup is encrypted by Data Protector and you are either recovering the Cell Manager or a client where the Cell Manager is not accessible, the following prompt is displayed:  
  
Do you want to use AES key file for decryption [y/n]?  
Press **y**.  
  
Ensure that the keystore (DR-ClientName-keys.csv) is available on the client (by inserting a medium on which you have the key) and enter the full path to the keystore file. The keystore file is copied to the default location on the DR OS and is used by the Disk Agents. Disaster recovery now continues without further interruption.
7. If you are performing an offline recovery and the information in the SRD file is not up to date (for example, because you changed the backup device after the disaster), edit the SRD file, before you can continue with this procedure. See [“Recovery using an edited SRD file” \(page 99\)](#).
8. Data Protector will then reestablish the previous storage structure within the selected scope of recovery and restore all critical volumes.
9. Remove the client’s local Data Protector account created in [Step 1](#) from the Data Protector admin user group on the Cell Manager, unless it existed on the Cell Manager before the disaster recovery.
10. Additional steps are required if you are recovering a Cell Manager or performing advanced recovery tasks (such as editing the SRD files). For more information, see [“Restoring the Data Protector Cell Manager specifics” \(page 98\)](#) and [“Advanced recovery tasks on Linux systems” \(page 98\)](#).
11. Restore user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

# One Button Disaster Recovery of a Linux system

One Button Disaster Recovery (OBDR) is an automated Data Protector recovery method for Linux clients and Cell Manager, where user intervention is reduced to minimum. For details on supported operating systems, see the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

OBDR collects all relevant environment data automatically at backup time. During backup, data required for temporary DR OS setup and configuration is packed in a single large OBDR image file and stored on the backup tape. When a disaster occurs, OBDR device (backup device, capable of emulating CD-ROM) is used to boot the target system directly from the tape which contains the OBDR image file with disaster recovery information.

Data Protector then runs and configures the disaster recovery operating system (DR OS), formats and partitions the disks and finally restores the original operating system with Data Protector as it was at the time of backup.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new backup after each hardware, software or configuration change. This also applies to any network configuration changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.
- 

The OBDR procedure recovers volumes depending on the selected scope of the recovery.

Any remaining partitions can be recovered using the standard Data Protector restore.

## Overview

The general steps using the One Button Disaster Recovery method for a Linux client are:

1. **Phase 0**
  - a. You need an OBDR backup (create the backup specification using the Data Protector One Button Disaster Recovery wizard).
  - b. If you are using encrypted backups, store the encryption key on a removable medium so that it is available for disaster recovery. You will need the key for a Cell Manager recovery or if the connection to the Cell Manager cannot be established.
2. **Phase 1**

Boot from the recovery tape and select the scope of recovery.
3. **Phase 2**

By default, critical volumes (the boot and the root volumes, and the volumes containing the Data Protector installation and configuration) are restored.
4. **Phase 3**

Restore any remaining volumes using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** It is recommended to restrict access to OBDR boot tapes.
- 

The following sections explain the requirements, limitations, preparation and recovery pertaining to One Button Disaster Recovery on Linux systems. See also “[Advanced recovery tasks on Linux systems](#)” (page 98).

## Requirements

- The Data Protector Automatic Disaster Recovery and Java GUI Client components must be installed on systems for which you want to enable recovery using this method. Additionally, the Automatic Disaster Recovery component must be installed on systems where the DR CD ISO image will be prepared. For details, see the *HP Data Protector Installation and Licensing Guide*.
- It is essential to have an OBDR capable system configuration: the system’s BIOS must support bootable CD extensions as defined in the El-Torito standard and read/write access to hard

disk drive using LBA addressing via INT13h function XXh. The OBDR device must conform to the same standard when emulating the CD-ROM. The BIOS options can either be checked in the user's manuals of the system or by inspecting the system setup before the boot.

For more information about supported systems, devices and media, see the HP Tape Hardware Compatibility Table and the latest support matrices at <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

- The hardware configuration of the target system must be the same as of the original system. This includes SCSI BIOS settings (sector remapping).
- Replacement disks have to be attached to the same host bus adapter on the same bus.
- The volume on which Data Protector is installed should have at least 800 MB of free space. This space is required to create a temporary image.
- A media pool with a Non-appendable media usage policy and Loose media allocation policy has to be created for the OBDR capable device. Only the media from such pool can be used for disaster recovery.
- In a SAN boot configuration, make sure the following items on the target system are identical to the ones on the original system:
  - The local HBA's BIOS parameters
  - LUN numbers of the SAN disks
- In multipath SAN disk configurations, the LUNs and WWIDs of the target system disks must be identical to the ones on the original system.

## Limitations

- One Button Disaster Recovery backup session can only be performed for one selected client or Cell Manager on the same OBDR device at a time. This has to be done on a single, locally attached OBDR capable device.
- The new disk has to be the same size or bigger than the affected disk. If it is larger than the original disk, the difference will remain unallocated.
- If you have a mount point with the name `CONFIGURATION` and it contains the directory `SystemRecoveryData`, data in the directory `SystemRecoveryData` will not be backed up.
- USB tape devices are not supported.
- Do not mount disks using the disk ID, because the ID is unique and depends on the disk serial number. In case of a disaster, the disk may be replaced and the new disk will have a new ID. As a result, the disaster recovery fails.
- Recovery of a SAN boot configuration is supported only for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11.x systems.

## Preparation

For the general preparation procedure for all disaster recovery methods before completing the steps listed in this section, see the *HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery Guide*. See also "[Advanced recovery tasks on Linux systems](#)" (page 98).

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** Prepare for disaster recovery *before* a disaster occurs.

---

Create a media pool for DDS or LTO media with `Non-appendable` media usage policy (to ensure that this will be the only backup on tape) and `Loose` media allocation policy (because the tape is formatted during OBDR backup). In addition, select this media pool as a default media pool for

the OBDR device. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “creating media pool”. Only media from such pool can be used for OBDR.

## OBDR backup

Create the OBDR backup specification locally from the GUI that is installed on the system which you plan to recover using OBDR. You can then later run it from any other system.

1. In the Context List, select **Backup**.
2. Click **Tasks** navigation tab and check **One Button Disaster Recovery wizard** in the Scoping Pane.
3. Click **Next**.
4. All critical objects are already selected (including the IDB in case of the Cell Manager OBDR backup) and cannot be deselected. Manually select any other partitions you want to keep, because during the recovery procedure, Data Protector deletes all partitions from your system. Click **Next**.
5. Select the locally attached OBDR device you are going to use for backup and click **Next**.
6. Select backup options. For more details on available options, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “backup options”.
7. Click **Next** to proceed to the Scheduler page, which can be used to schedule the backup. See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “scheduling backups on specific dates and times”.
8. Click **Next** to display the Backup Object Summary page, in which you can review the backup options.

---

**NOTE:** In the Summary page, you cannot change a previously selected backup device or the order in which the backup specifications follow one another (move up and move down functionalities are not available). Only OBDR non-essential backup objects can be deleted as well as general object properties can be viewed.

However, a backup object’s description can be changed.

---

9. In the final page of the Backup wizard, you can save the backup specification, start the interactive backup, or preview the backup.  
It is recommended to save the backup specification so that you can schedule or modify it later.  
Once a backup specification is saved, you can edit it. Right-click the backup specification and select **Properties**. You are offered to treat the modified backup specification as a standard Data Protector backup specification or as an OBDR backup specification. Save it as an OBDR backup specification to ensure that you do not override OBDR specific options in it. If saved as a standard backup specification, it may not be usable for OBDR purposes.
10. Click **Start Backup** to run the backup interactively. The Start Backup dialog box appears. Click **OK** to start the backup.  
If the backup is an encrypted, encryption IDs are exported automatically by the `omnisrdupdate` utility which is executed as a post-exec command.

A bootable image file of the system, containing all information required for installation and configuration of temporary DR OS, will be written at the beginning of the tape to make it bootable.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new backup and prepare a bootable backup medium after each hardware, software, or configuration change. This also applies to any network configuration changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.
- 

## Preparing the encryption keys

For a Cell Manager recovery or an offline client recovery, you must ensure that the encryption keys are available during the disaster recovery by storing them on a removable medium. For a Cell Manager recovery, prepare the removable medium in advance, before the disaster occurs.

The encryption keys are not part of the DR OS image file. During the disaster recovery image creation, the keys are automatically exported to the Cell Manager to the file `Data_Protector_program_data\Config\Server\export\keys\DR-ClientName-keys.csv` (Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012), `Data_Protector_home\Config\Server\export\keys\DR-ClientName-keys.csv` (other Windows systems), or `/var/opt/omni/server/export/keys/DR-ClientName-keys.csv` (UNIX systems), where *ClientName* is the name of the client for which the image is being created.

Ensure that you have the correct encryption key for each backup that is prepared for a disaster recovery.

## Recovery

You need the following to successfully perform a disaster recovery on the affected system:

- A new hard disk to replace your affected disk (if needed).
- A bootable backup medium with all critical objects of the client that you want to recover.
- An OBDR device connected locally to the target system.

The following is a step-by-step procedure for performing a One Button Disaster Recovery of a Linux system:

1. Unless you are performing an offline disaster recovery, add an account with the following properties to the Data Protector admin user group on the Cell Manager:
  - Start restore
  - Restore to other clients
  - Restore as root

---

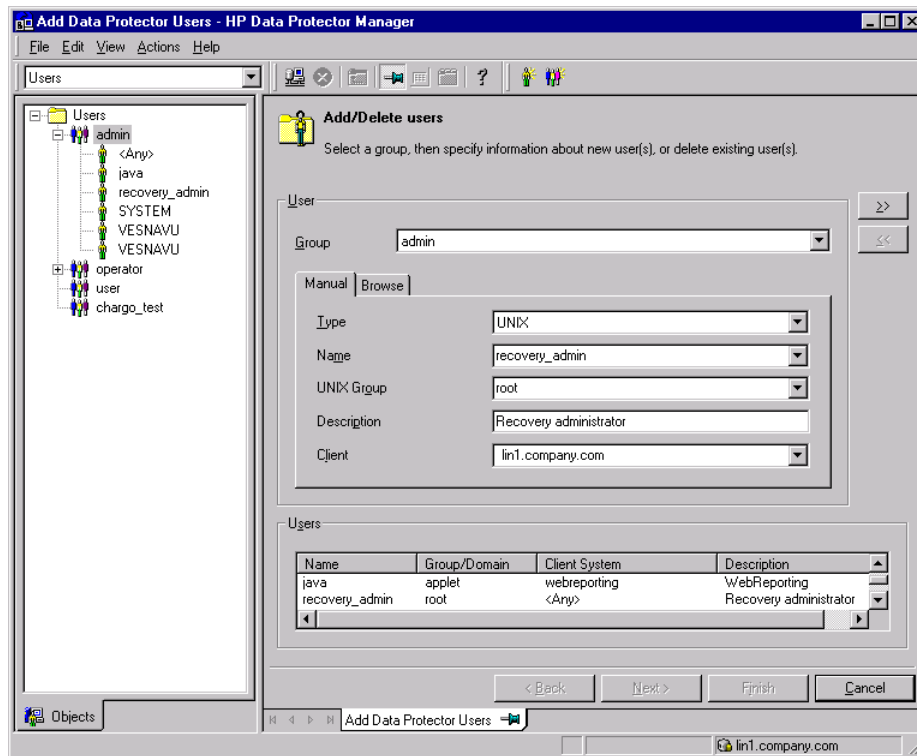
**NOTE:** The disaster recovery procedure can only be performed by the *root* user.

---

For more information on adding users, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "adding Data Protector users".



**Figure 11 Adding a user account**



**NOTE:** If you are using encrypted control communication between the clients in a cell, you must add the client to the Security Exceptions list on the Cell Manager before you start the recovery. Unless you are using a local device, the Media Agent client must be added to the Security Exceptions list on the Cell Manager as well.

2. Insert the tape containing the image file and your backed up data into an OBDR device.
3. Shut down the target system and power off the tape device.
4. Power the target system on and, while it is being initialized, press the eject button on the tape device and power it on. For details, see the device documentation.
5. The DR OS is loaded first into memory and then the scope menu is displayed.  
Select the scope of recovery. There are four different scopes of recovery and two additional options:
  - **Reboot:** Disaster recovery is not performed and the system is restarted.
  - **Default Recovery:** Recovers the `/boot` and `/` (root) volumes and all volumes on which Data Protector installation and configuration files are located (`/opt`, `/etc`, and `/var`). All other disks are not partitioned and formatted and are ready for Phase 3.
  - **Minimal Recovery:** Recovers only the `/boot` and `/` (root) volumes.
  - **Full Recovery:** All volumes are recovered, not just the critical ones.
  - **Full with Shared Volumes:** All volumes are recovered, including shared volumes that were locked at backup time.
  - **Run Shell:**  
Runs the Linux shell. You can use it for advanced configuration or recovery tasks.
6. To modify the disaster recovery options, press any key to stop the wizard during the countdown and modify the options. Select **Proceed With Restore** to continue with the disaster recovery.

7. If the disaster recovery backup is encrypted and you are either recovering the Cell Manager or a client where the Cell Manager is not accessible, the following prompt will appear:  
Do you want to use AES key file for decryption [y/n]?  
Press **y**.  
Ensure that the keystore (*DR-ClientName-keys.csv*) is available on the client (for example, by inserting a CD-ROM, floppy disk, or USB flash drive) and enter the full path to the keystore file. The keystore file is copied to the default location on the DR OS and is used by the Disk Agents. Disaster recovery now continues without further interruption.
8. If you are performing an offline recovery and the information in the SRD file is not up to date (for example, because you changed the backup device after the disaster), edit the SRD file, before you can continue with this procedure. See [“Recovery using an edited SRD file” \(page 99\)](#).
9. Data Protector will then reestablish the previous storage structure and restore all critical volumes.
10. Remove the client’s local Data Protector administrator account created in [Step 1](#) from the Data Protector admin user group on the Cell Manager, unless it existed on the Cell Manager before the disaster recovery.
11. Additional steps are required if you are recovering a Cell Manager or performing advanced recovery tasks (such as editing the SRD files). For more information, see [“Advanced recovery tasks on Linux systems” \(page 98\)](#).
12. Restore the user and application data using the standard Data Protector restore procedure.

## Advanced recovery tasks on Linux systems

This section provides explanation of the steps you will need to take if you want to perform advanced recovery tasks such as restoring Cell Manager specifics.

### Restoring the Data Protector Cell Manager specifics

This section explains additional steps for particular methods that should be performed when restoring Linux Cell Manager.

#### Making IDB consistent (all methods)

The procedure described in this section should only be used after you have performed the general disaster recovery procedure.

To make the IDB consistent, import the medium with the last backup so that the information about the backed up objects is imported to the database. In order to do so, perform the following steps:

1. Using the Data Protector GUI, recycle the medium or media with the backup of the partitions that remain to be restored for enabling the medium or media to be imported in the IDB. For more information on recycling media, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “recycling media”. Sometimes it is not possible to recycle a medium since Data Protector keeps it locked. In such a case stop Data Protector processes and delete the contents of the Data Protector `tmp` directory by executing the following commands:  

```
omnisv -stop  
rm /var/opt/omni/tmp/*  
omnisv -start
```
2. Using the Data Protector GUI, export the medium or media with the backup of the partitions that remain to be restored. For more information on exporting media, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “exporting, media”.
3. Using the Data Protector GUI, import the medium or media with the backup of the partitions that remain to be restored. For more information on importing media, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “importing, media”.

## Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery specifics

Two additional steps are required in Phase 0 if you are recovering Linux Cell Manager using Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery:

- Disaster recovery CD for the Cell Manager should be prepared in advance.

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new backup and prepare a new DR CD after each hardware, software, or configuration change. This also applies to any network changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.

---

- In addition to the Cell Manager, you should save the updated SRD file of the Cell Manager on several secure locations as a part of the disaster recovery preparation policy, because the SRD file is the only file in Data Protector where information about objects and media is stored, when IDB is not available. If the SRD file is saved only on the Cell Manager, it is not accessible if the Cell Manager fails.

See the “Planning and preparing for a disaster recovery” chapter in the *HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery Guide*.

- If your backups are encrypted, you must save the encryption key to a removable medium before a disaster occurs. If the encryption key is saved only on the Cell Manager, it is not accessible if the Cell Manager fails. Without the encryption key, disaster recovery is not possible.

See the “Planning and preparing for a disaster recovery” chapter in the *HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery Guide*.

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** It is recommended to restrict access to backup media, DR images, SRD files, removable media with encryption keys, and disaster recovery CDs.

---

## One Button Disaster Recovery specifics

Since the IDB is not available if the Cell Manager has been struck by a disaster, you have to know the location of OBDR bootable medium.

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** Perform a new OBDR backup and prepare a new bootable medium after each hardware, software, or configuration change. This also applies to any network changes, such as change of IP address or DNS server.

---

If your backups are encrypted, you must save the encryption key to a removable medium before a disaster occurs. If the encryption key is saved only on the Cell Manager, it is not accessible if the Cell Manager fails. Without the encryption key, disaster recovery is not possible.

See the “Planning and preparing for a disaster recovery” chapter in the *HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery Guide*.

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** It is recommended to restrict access to backup media and removable media with encryption keys.

---

## Recovery using an edited SRD file

Information about backup devices or media stored in the SRD file may be out of date at the time you are performing disaster recovery. This is not a problem if you are performing an online recovery, because the required information is stored in the IDB on the Cell Manager. But if you are performing an offline recovery, the information stored in the IDB is not accessible.

For example, a disaster struck not only the Cell Manager, but also a backup device connected to it. If you replace the backup device with a different backup device after the disaster, the information on backup devices stored in the updated SRD file (`recovery.srd`) will be wrong and the recovery

will fail. In this case, edit the updated SRD file before performing Phase 2 of disaster recovery to update the wrong information and thus enable a successful recovery.

To edit the SRD file, open it in a text editor and update the information that has changed.

- 
- ❗ **IMPORTANT:** The file is encoded in the Unicode UTF-16 format as opposed to UTF-8 which is more common on Linux systems.
- 

- 💡 **TIP:** You can display the device configuration information using the `devbra -dev` command.
- 

For example, if the client name of the system you are trying to recover has changed, replace the value of the `-host` option. You can also edit the information about the:

- Cell Manager client name (`-cm`).
- Media Agent client (`-mahost`).
- Logical device or drive (library) name (`-dev`).
- Device type (`-devtype`).

For possible `-devtype` option values, see the `sanconf` man page or the *HP Data Protector Command Line Interface Reference*.

- Device SCSI address (`-devaddr`).
- Device policy (`-devpolicy`).  
Policy can be defined as 1 (Standalone), 3 (Stacker), 5 (Jukebox), 6 (external control), 8 (Grau DAS exchanger library), 9 (STK Silo medium library) or 10 (SCSI-II Library).
- Robotics SCSI address (`-devioct1`).
- Library slot (`-physloc`)
- Logical library name (`-storname`)

After you have edited the file, save it in the Unicode (UTF-16) format to the original location.

### Example

#### **Changing a MA Client**

You performed a disaster recovery backup using a backup device connected to the client `old_mahost.company.com`. At the time of disaster recovery, the same backup device is connected to the client `new_mahost.company.com` with the same SCSI address. To perform a disaster recovery, replace the `-mahost old_mahost.company.com` string in the (updated) SRD file with `-mahost new_mahost.company.com`, before performing the Phase 2 of disaster recovery.

If the backup device has a different SCSI address on the new MA client, modify the value of the `-devaddr` option in the updated SRD file accordingly.

### Example

#### **Changing a backup device and MA client**

To perform disaster recovery using another device than the one which was used for the backup (MA client is the same), modify the following option values in the updated SRD file: `-dev`, `-devaddr`, `-devtype`, `-devpolicy`, and `-devioct1`. If you are using a library device for restore, modify also the values of the following options in the SRD file: `-physloc`, and `-storname`.

For example, you performed backup for disaster recovery purposes using an HP Ultrium standalone device with the device name `Ultrium_system1`, connected to the MA host `system1` (Linux). However, for the disaster recovery you would like to use an HP Ultrium robotics library with the

logical library name `Autoldr_system1` with drive `Ultrium_system2` connected to the MA client `system2` (Linux).

First, run the `devbra -dev` command on `system2` to display the list of configured devices and their configuration information. You will need this information to replace the following option values in the updated SRD file:

```
-dev "Ultrium_system1" -devaddr /dev/nst0 -devtype 13 -devpolicy 1  
-mahost system1.company.com
```

with something like:

```
-dev "Ultrium_system2" -devaddr /dev/nst1 -devtype 13 -devpolicy 10  
-devioctl /dev/sg1 -physloc " 2 -1" -storname "AutoLdr_system2" -mahost  
system2.company.com.
```

---

❗ **IMPORTANT:** You should restrict access to the SRD files due to security reasons.

---

### Procedure

Perform the following additional steps before proceeding with the ordinary EADR/OBDR recovery procedure:

1. When the Disaster Recovery wizard appears, press **q** to stop the wizard during the countdown and select the **Install Only** option. This option will install only a minimal version of Data Protector to the target system. Phase 2 of disaster recovery will not start automatically if the **Install Only** option is selected.
2. Switch to another shell.  
Edit the SRD file `/opt/omni/bin/recovery.srd`. For details, see [“Updating and editing the System Recovery Data \(SRD\)”](#) (page 24).
3. After you have edited and saved the SRD file, execute the command:  
`omnidr -srd recovery.srd -drimini /opt/omni/bin/drim/drecovery.ini`
4. Once the recovery finishes, return to the previous shell and proceed with the next step in the ordinary EADR/OBDR recovery procedure.

---

# 5 Troubleshooting disaster recovery

## In this chapter

This chapter contains descriptions of problems you might encounter while performing a disaster recovery. You can start with problems connected to a particular disaster recovery method and continue with general disaster recovery problems. For information where to find the error messages, see “The AUTODR.log file” (page 102).

For general Data Protector troubleshooting information, see the *HP Data Protector Troubleshooting Guide*.

## Before you begin

- Ensure that the latest official Data Protector patches are installed. For more information on how to verify this, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “patches”.
- For general Data Protector limitations, as well as known problems and workarounds, see the *HP Data Protector Product Announcements, Software Notes, and References*.
- For an up-to-date list of supported versions, platforms, and other information, see <http://support.openview.hp.com/selfsolve/manuals>.

## General troubleshooting

### The AUTODR.log file

AUTODR.log is a log file located in the *Data\_Protector\_home\tmp* (on Windows systems) or */var/opt/omni/tmp* (on UNIX systems) directory and contains messages relevant to the automatic disaster recovery methods (EADR, ODBR, ASR). You should inspect it if an error has occurred. AUTODR.log logs many different messages, mostly for development and support purposes. Only some of them are relevant to you and indicate that an error has occurred. These error messages are usually logged at the end of the log file with a traceback appended.

There are four types (levels) of messages in the AUTODR.log (note that they do not correspond to the same report levels for messages that are reported at the end of a backup session in the Data Protector GUI):

- **Critical error:** The error is so serious that the backup of the object cannot continue and will be aborted.
- **Error:** The error may be critical, but it depends on different factors.  
For example, AUTODR.log reports an error that some driver has not been included in the disaster recovery operating system.
- **Warning and Info:** These are not error messages and usually do not mean that anything is wrong.

On Windows systems, some of the most common messages stated in the `AUTODR.log` file are:

- `unsupported location`: Data Protector notices that a certain file that is required by a service or a driver that will be included in the disaster recovery operating system (DR OS), is not located under the `%SystemRoot%` directory.

Such drivers are often used by the antivirus and remote control software (for example `pcAnywhere`). This message is important, because it can mean that the service/driver that requires the missing file, will not be operational after the boot. It depends on which service or driver was affected, if the disaster recovery will fail or succeed. A possible solution for this problem is copying the missing file into the `%SystemRoot%` directory and changing its path in the Windows Registry. Note that incorrect editing of the Windows Registry may severely damage your system.

## Debugging disaster recovery sessions

During a disaster recovery session, the debugging settings and the location of the debug logs depend on the disaster recovery phase:

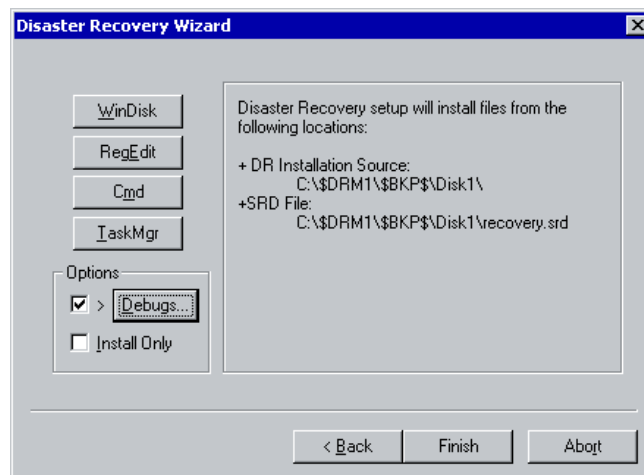
- During the DR OS preparation, the debug logs are *automatically* saved to `X:\$DRM$\log` (Windows Vista and later releases), `c:\$DRM$\log` (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003), or `/opt/omni/bin/drim/log/Phase1.log` (Linux systems).
- During the data restore step, *you must manually select* the debugging options in the Disaster Recovery Wizard to enable debugging.

### Windows systems

To enable creation of debug logs during data restore:

1. In the Disaster Recovery Wizard, select the check box to the left of the **Debugs** button.

**Figure 12 Enabling debugs during a disaster recovery session**

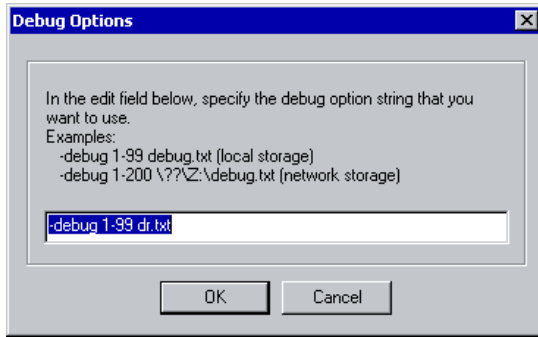


2. To specify the debug options, such as the location where the debugs are saved, click **Debugs**. By default, the debugs are saved into the `%SystemRoot%\system32\OB2DR\tmp` directory.

**NOTE:** With Windows Vista and later releases, the directory `%SystemRoot%\system32\OB2DR\tmp` resides on RAM disk. The RAM disk size is typically limited to less than 32 MB. Once the RAM disk usage reaches the limit, Data Protector may start to behave unpredictably. Thus, if you expect that the disaster recovery session will produce a large amount of debugs, you must change the location to which the debugs will be saved.

3. The Debug Options window appears.

**Figure 13 Changing the debug logs location**



Enter the path of the file debug logs will be saved to. Drive letters must be preceded by the string `\\?`, for example, `\\?\Z:\debug.txt`.

If you choose to save the debugs to a network share, use the `net use` command to map the network share to which the debug logs are written to a drive letter. For example:

```
NET USE X: \\SystemName\SharedFolderForDebugOutput Password /USER:Username
```

### Linux systems

To enable creation of debug logs during data restore:

1. In the Disaster Recovery Wizard, select **Start the Disaster Recovery Process > Use debugs**.
2. On the debug options screen, select to either use the default options or modify them.

Select one of following options:

- 1) Use Default Debug Option "-debug 1-200 dr.txt"
- 2) Specify Different Debug Option
- 3) Disable Debug option

Command [1-3]:

---

**NOTE:** On Linux systems, the directory to which the debug logs are saved, resides on RAM disk. The RAM disk size is typically limited. Once the RAM disk usage reaches the limit, Data Protector may start to behave unpredictably. Thus, if you expect that the disaster recovery session will produce a large amount of debugs, you should change the location to which the debugs will be saved. To change the location, select **Specify Different Debug Option**.

---

3. A new screen will appear on which you can enter the debug parameters.

Examples:

```
-debug 1-200about debug.txt (local storage)
-debug 1-200 //servername/sharename/debug.txt (windows share)
-debug 1-200 servername:/sharename/debug.txt (nfs share)
```

Specify the debug option string that you want to use:

You can choose to save the debug files to a Windows shared disk or an NFS shared folder.

Note that you must mount a shared folder in order to save the debug logs there. Switch to another console by pressing **Alt-F3** and mount the share.

## Setting omnirc options during disaster recovery

For general information on omnirc options, see the *HP Data Protector Troubleshooting Guide*.

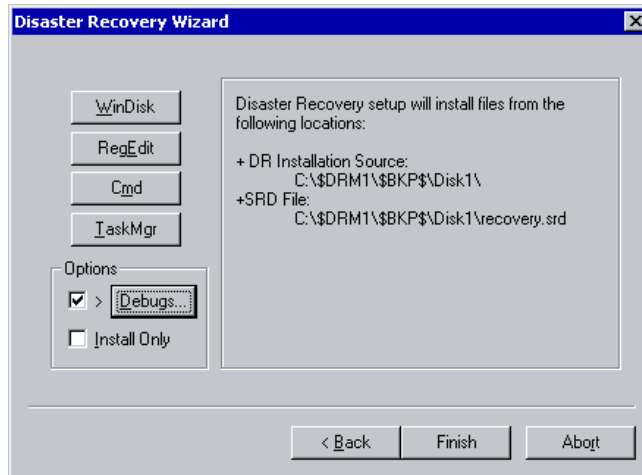


## Windows systems

If you need to set an omnirc option during the disaster recovery (except for Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery), perform the following steps:

1. When the Disaster Recovery Wizard appears, press any key to stop the wizard during the countdown.

**Figure 14 Disaster recovery wizard**



2. Click **Cmd** to start the command prompt.
3. Execute the following command:  

```
echo variable > %SystemRoot%\system32\OB2DR\omnirc
```

where *variable* is the omnirc option exactly as it should be written in the omnirc file.  
For example:  

```
echo OB2RECONNECT_RETRY=1000 > %SystemRoot%\system32\OB2DR\omnirc
```

This command creates an omnirc file in the disaster recovery operating system with the OB2RECONNECT\_RETRY option set to 1000 seconds.
4. Close the command prompt and click **Next** in the Disaster Recovery Wizard to proceed with disaster recovery.

## Linux systems

1. In the disaster recovery wizard, switch to another console by pressing **Alt-F3**.
2. In the console, execute the following command:  

```
echo variable > /opt/omni/omnirc
```

where *variable* is the omnirc option exactly as it should be written in the omnirc file.  
Example:  

```
echo OB2RECONNECT_RETRY=1000 > /opt/omni/omnirc
```

This command creates an omnirc file in the disaster recovery operating system with the OB2RECONNECT\_RETRY option set to 1000 seconds.
3. Type `exit` to exit the shell and proceed with disaster recovery in the Disaster Recovery Wizard.

## The drm.cfg file on Windows systems

The Data Protector disaster recovery configuration is set up to cover a broad range of system configurations. However, in some cases, these settings may not be the most appropriate, or you may want to modify some of the settings in order to troubleshoot issues on your system.

The `drm.cfg` file contains several parameters that you can modify and which affect the disaster recovery process, along with a description of their impact. The `drm.cfg` file is available only for EADR and OBDR.

To change the parameter:

1. Copy the template file `drm.cfg.tpl` to `drm.cfg`.  
The template is created during an installation or upgrade in `Data_Protector_home\bin\drm\config`, with all parameters set to their default values.
2. Edit the `drm.cfg` file. Set the desired value for parameters. Follow the instructions in the file.

## Common problems

### Problem

#### Disaster recovery from a copy

You cannot perform a disaster recovery from a media copy or an object copy.

Data Protector by default uses the original media set to perform a disaster recovery. Thus, copy object versions are not displayed in the Disaster Recovery Wizard of the Data Protector GUI.

### Action

To perform a disaster recovery from a media copy or an object copy, if your original media set is not available or is damaged, proceed as follows:

- Object copy: Export all media in the original media set from the IDB and then regenerate the SRD file. Data Protector then offers you the first available copy of the original media set in the Disaster Recovery Wizard.  
See the *HP Data Protector Help* index: “exporting media” and [“Updating and editing the System Recovery Data \(SRD\)”](#) (page 24).
- Media copy: In the SRD file, replace the media IDs of the original media with the media IDs of the media copies. Data Protector then offers you the first available copy of the original media set in the Disaster Recovery Wizard.  
See [“Updating and editing the System Recovery Data \(SRD\)”](#) (page 24).

## Problems on Windows systems

### Problem

#### Problems logging on to the system after disaster recovery finishes

You may receive the following error message after the system is recovered:

The system cannot log you on to this domain, because the system's computer account in its primary domain is missing or the password on that account is incorrect.

This type of message is usually caused by one of the following reasons:

- After collecting all information for successful disaster recovery (including full backup), you reinstalled Windows and (re)inserted into the offending domain.
- After collecting all information for successful disaster recovery (including full backup), you removed your system from the offending domain and later (re)inserted it into the same or some other domain.

### Action

In cases like this, Windows generates new system security information, which is incompatible with information that is restored during disaster recovery. The solution is the following:

1. Log on to the system locally with an administrator account.

2. In the Control Panel, click **Network** and, using the Identification tab, remove the system from its current domain to a temporary workgroup (for example, TEMP). After this is done, reinsert the system into the domain from which it was previously removed. You need a domain administrator's password.
3. After the computer is again in the proper domain, click **OK** in the Network window. Windows will force you to restart the system.
4. To update this new state with disaster recovery, you should perform all necessary procedures (collecting system data, backup) once more, as described in the "Preparing for a Disaster Recovery" section.

### Problem

#### **Configuration backup fails while collecting data for automatic disaster recovery methods (EADR, OBDR, or ASR)**

When running a full client backup, the CONFIGURATION backup may fail while collecting data needed for a certain backup method even though this method will not be used for disaster recovery, because Data Protector by default collects data for all automatic disaster recovery methods. For example, this may happen while Data Protector collects data for EADR if the boot disks are LDM disks.

### Action

Disable automatic collecting of data for the disaster recovery method that failed. This will allow Data Protector to collect data needed for other methods.

Set the option `OB2_TURNOFF_COLLECTING` to one of the following values:

- 0 Default setting, data collection is turned on for all automatic methods (EADR, OBDR, ASR).
- 1 Turn off collecting of EADR/OBDR data. ASR data is still collected.
- 2 Turn off collecting of ASR data. EADR/OBDR data is still collected.
- 3 Turn off collecting for all methods.

See ["Setting omnirc options during disaster recovery"](#) (page 104).

### Problem

#### **Disaster recovery fails due to inappropriate network settings**

A disaster recovery session fails because Data Protector recovers a client with unsuitable network configuration.

The default settings that are used to configure the client's network depend on the client's operating system:

##### ***Windows XP, Windows Server 2003:***

The original network configuration (network configuration at the time of backup), which is specified in the SRD file.

##### ***Windows Vista and later releases:***

Network configuration that is defined by the DHCP settings.

### Action

To switch to the non-default network configuration:

##### ***Windows XP, Windows Server 2003:***

1. Start a disaster recovery session.
2. When Data Protector displays:

Press F8 in the next 10 seconds to switch network to DHCP...

press **F8**.

### **Windows Vista and later releases:**

1. Start a disaster recovery session.
2. In the Data Protector Disaster recovery GUI select the option **Restore Network Configuration**.

#### Problem

**EADR and OBDR online recovery fails when the Cell Manager and a client are in the different domains**

#### Action

Perform the following actions to ensure that your network is configured appropriately:

1. Update the `host` files on both Cell Manager and client systems. These files must contain host names of the Cell Manager and of the client and their IP addresses.
2. Check whether the `ping` request between the Cell Manager and the client returns the correct value. In case of a problem, contact your network administrator.
3. Check whether the DNS resolution between the Cell Manager and the client is correct with the `omnicheck -dns` command. For more details, see the `omnicheck` man page. In case of a problem, contact your network administrator.

## Assisted manual disaster recovery

#### Problem

**Drstart reports: "Can not copy <filename>"**

This error is reported because the `drstart` utility cannot copy the specified file. One of the reasons may be that the file is locked by the system. For example, if `drstart` cannot copy `omniinet.exe`, it might be because the `Inet` service is already running. This is not a normal scenario and should not happen after a clean install.

#### Action

A dialog box will appear asking you whether you would like to proceed with copying the rest of the files. If you click `Yes`, `drstart` will skip the locked file and continue copying other files. This will solve the problem if the file is locked by the system, as the process required for the disaster recovery is already running and therefore the file does not need to be copied.

You can also close the `drstart` utility by clicking the `Abort` button.

## Disk delivery disaster recovery

#### Problem

**Cannot find physical location of drives selected for disk delivery**

When performing Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, you may receive the following error message:

Cannot find physical location of drives selected for disk delivery

Objects will be restored when creating a partition on the new disk, if you select a drive letter that has not been used before.

Disaster recovery checks the disk information before restoring objects. An internal function reads the Registry value `Information` created by the Disk Administrator. If the Disk Administrator is started several times, the format of the `Information` value will change and the parsers will fail.

#### Action

Delete the `Information` value from the `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\Disk` Registry key and restart the Disk Administrator.

## Problem

### No operating system found

When performing Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, you may receive the following error message:

No Operating System Found

The error is reported during the final startup of a Windows system, which fails.

## Action

Check the `boot.ini` file for information about where the partition information is located. For additional information, see [Step 4](#) in the section “Updating and editing the System Recovery Data (SRD)” (page 24).

## Problem

### Disk delivery disaster recovery of a Media Agent client

If you are performing a Disk Delivery disaster recovery, Data Protector first tries to connect to the original client where the backup device was attached (Media Agent client) in order to use the same device for restore. However, when you are performing Disk Delivery disaster recovery of the affected Media Agent client where the backup has been made, Data Protector will not be able to connect to it and will proceed with offline restore and search for a local device for the restore. If there is no local device attached, Data Protector will issue a notification that there is no local device attached and will abort the disaster recovery.

## Action

There are two methods to avoid this:

- Move the media to another pool. This way you assign the media to the new device. Then proceed with Disk Delivery disaster recovery.
- The second method involves preparation prior to the disaster. If you have two Media Agent clients in the cell, you can back up of the first Media Agent client to another and the other way round before the disaster to avoid problems when performing Disk Delivery disaster recovery of a Media Agent client.

# Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery and One Button Disaster Recovery

## Common EADR and OBDR problems

## Problem

### Automatic DR information could not be collected

When using EADR or OBDR, it is possible that you will receive the following error:

Automatic DR information could not be collected. Aborting the collecting of system recovery data

## Action

- Check if all storage devices are configured correctly. If Device Manager reports a device as “Unknown Device”, install the proper device drivers before you can perform EADR/OBDR.
- There must be enough registry space available. It is recommended to set the maximum registry size to at least twice that of the current registry size. If there is not enough registry space available, a similar entry would appear in the `autodr.log`:

```
ERROR registry 'Exception while saving registry'
```

```
...
```

If the problem persists, uninstall the Data Protector Automatic Disaster Recovery component (so that at least Manual Disaster Recovery and Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery will work) and contact technical support.

### Problem

#### Some non-critical errors were detected

When using EADR or OBDR, it is possible that you will receive the following error:

Some non-critical errors were detected during the collecting of Automatic DR data. Please review the Automatic DR log file.

A non-critical error detected during the execution of the Automatic Disaster Recovery module, means that such backup can most likely still be used for disaster-recovery purposes. Possible reasons for non-critical errors are stored in `autodr.log` (located in `Data_Protector_home\tmp`):

### Action

- Services or drivers outside of the `%SystemRoot%` folder (for example, virus scanners). `autodr.log` would contain a similar error message:

```
ERROR safeboot 'unsupported location' 'intercheck support 06' 2
u'\\??\D:\\Program Files\\Sophos SWEEP for NT\\icntst06.sys'.
```

You can ignore this error message, as it does not affect the success of disaster recovery.

### Problem

#### Network is not available during restore

### Action

Ensure that the problem is not with switch, cables, and so on. Another possibility is also that the DNS server (as configured at backup time) is offline during the restore. Since the configuration of the DR OS is the same as at backup time, the network will not be available. In this case perform offline restore and change the DNS settings after recovery. On Windows, you can also edit the registry (`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Tcpip\Parameters`) before Phase 2 is started. In this case restart the system before Phase 2 for the changes to take effect. After Phase 2 finishes, you can correct the settings before Phase 3 can be started.



---

**CAUTION:** Editing the registry incorrectly can result in failed disaster recovery.

---

### Problem

#### Computer stops responding

### Action

Check if the CD/tape is readable. Do not reuse CD-RWs/tapes too many times.

## Problems on Windows systems

### Problem

#### Auto logon does not work

### Action

Sometimes auto logon does not work and you have to manually log on using the `DRM$ADMIN` account.

## Problem

### Cannot create a CD ISO image for EADR of Microsoft Cluster Server

## Action

The quorum disk has to be backed up in order to be able to create an CD ISO Image.

## Problem

### Creating a CD ISO image on a Microsoft Cluster Server client fails

In a Microsoft Cluster Server environment, you cannot create an ISO image on a cluster client. The file system restore works as expected.

The issue arises because Data Protector tries to use the cluster IP (which is a virtual one) instead of the domain name (which is resolved to the IP of the physical client).

## Action

Change the connection order for network services so that the Local Area Connection is on top.

## Problem

### Volume is not re-mounted during phase 1

On some systems (depending on the disk controller and its configuration) a volume (without a drive letter assigned) associated with a mount point on a different volume may not be re-mounted properly during phase 1 of the disaster recovery. This may occur if the volume containing the mount point is recreated or reformatted (for example the System Volume with MiniOS), causing the operating system to boot in "Safe Mode" and to miss the detection of the file system present on the original mount point's target volume. Consequently, the disaster recovery module does not recognize this volume and reports it as `MISSING` in the `drecovery.ini` file. The contents of such a volume are intact, even if it is not recognized.

## Action

- Mount the volume with a drive letter and verify it with the `chkdsk /v /f` command or wait until the system is completely restored and then recreate the original mount point.
- Manually restart the system directly to MiniOS (do not start the system from the recovery CD). The previously dismounted volume will be automatically mounted to a drive letter.

## Problem

### On Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008 systems, the network is not available due to missing network drivers

During a disaster recovery, the network is not available because the DR OS does not support the network card.

## Action

Inject the missing drivers into the DR OS image. See ["Preparing a DR OS image for disaster recovery" \(page 41\)](#) (EADR) or ["Creating a backup specification for OBDR and performing an OBDR backup" \(page 50\)](#) (OBDR).

## Problem

### When encrypted control communication is enabled, Cell Manager does not respond during an online restore of a client

On Windows Vista and later releases, when you perform an online disaster recovery of a client in a DHCP environment with encrypted control communication enabled on the Cell Manager and the client added as an exception, online restore fails, disaster recovery continues with the offline restore. The reason is that a new temporary hostname is generated for the DR OS by default.

## Action

During disaster recovery, switch to the original network configuration by pressing **F8** when Data Protector displays

Press F8 to switch to the original network...

Alternatively, check the hostname of the system after the DR OS is started and add this name as an exception on the Cell Manager before starting the restore. For details, see the *HP Data Protector Help* index: "encrypted control communication".

## Problem

### Disaster recovery fails with "There is not enough space" message

A disaster recovery of a Windows Server 2008 R2 domain controller fails with an error similar to the following:

```
[Major] From: VRDA@computer.company.com "Dev1" [/CONFIGURATION] " Time:
07.12.2012 15:33:58
X:\windows\System32\OB2DR\tmp\config\ActiveDirectoryService\D$\
Windows\NTDS\ntds.dit Cannot write: ([112] There is not enough space
on the disk. ) => not restored.
```

## Action

1. Modify the backup specification for the client backup: in the source page, expand the CONFIGURATION object and clear the checkboxes for the ActiveDirectoryService and SYSVOL items.

---

**NOTE:** The Active Directory and SYSVOL will still be backed up as part of the system volume (C:/) backup. By default, they are located in C:/Windows/NTDS and C:/Windows/SYSVOL respectively.

---

2. Repeat the disaster recovery procedure.

## Problems on Windows Itanium systems

### Problem

#### After a failed or aborted disaster recovery, Boot Descriptors may be left in EFI

On Intel Itanium systems, after a failed or aborted disaster recovery session, Boot Descriptors (named DRM Temporary OS) may be left in the EFI environment. This can cause unwanted behavior when restarting the disaster recovery process.

## Action

Remove the boot descriptor using the option **Remove Boot Descriptor** from the scope selection menu. After the boot descriptor is removed, you can proceed with disaster recovery, by selecting the scope.

### Problem

#### A wrong or no boot disk is selected on Intel Itanium systems

On Intel Itanium systems, the wrong boot disk (or no boot disk at all) is selected.

## Action

1. Select **Manual Disk Selection** from the scope selection menu. A new menu, listing all available disks, will display.
2. Determine the correct boot disk. Press **o** to view information about the original disk and **d** to see details about the selected one.



3. Select the disk from the list using cursor keys and press **b**. You can remove a selection by pressing **c**.  
If the boot disk is not the same as the system disk (usually, both disks are the same), you must select the system disk as well.  
Select **Back**.
4. Select the scope of the recovery and disaster recovery will continue.

## Problems on Linux systems

### Problem

#### Minor errors or warnings are displayed during a client backup

During a client backup, minor errors may be displayed:

```
Cannot perform stat(): ([2] No such file or directory)
```

```
File is shorter than it was when it was opened
```

Such warnings and errors may appear due to changed files inside temporary Data Protector directories. This can happen for example if the /CONFIGURATION mount point and the / (root) mount point are backed up simultaneously.

### Action

Exclude the /opt/omni/bin/drim/tmp and /opt/omni/bin/drim/log directories from your backup specifications.

## Automated system recovery

### Problem

#### Network problems during ASR

Network problems can be the cause of different problems during ASR.

For example, the target system has two network adapters installed and one of them had been disabled when the disaster recovery backup was performed. During ASR, all devices are enabled by default. If both network adapters are active on the target system during ASR, the network may not be configured properly, resulting in problems connecting to the Cell Manager and Media Agent client. In this case, Data Protector will switch to offline or local recovery, display a connection error or ASR will fail.

### Action

To resolve the error, follow the normal ASR recovery procedure and press **F8** when the following text is displayed in the Disaster Recovery wizard:

```
Press F8 in the next 5 seconds to skip network configuration...
```

This will revert from Data Protector ASR network configuration to the standard Microsoft ASR network configuration.

### Problem

#### ASR aborts if network card drivers are not present

This problem occurs during ASR on newer machines, for which no appropriate network adapter driver is found on the Windows installation CD. When omnidr attempts to configure the use of static IP addresses, it fails because network adapters are not properly installed:

```
[Major] Failed to recreate the original network (TCP/IP) configuration.  
Verify that the network adapters are properly installed and working.
```

## Action

- Install the appropriate network drivers before starting `omnidr` or if possible, use a newer/slipstreamed version of the Windows installation CD that already includes the required network drivers.

To install the network driver before starting the Disaster Recovery, use the New Hardware Wizard, which can be invoked with the following command:

```
%SystemRoot%\system32\rundll32 shell32.dll,Control_RunDLL hdwwiz.cpl
```

- You may use the default ASR (DHCP) network installation.

Follow the normal ASR procedure and press **F8** when the following text is displayed in the Disaster Recovery wizard: Press F8 in the next 5 seconds to skip network configuration...

This will revert from Data Protector ASR network configuration to the standard Microsoft ASR network configuration.

## A Further information

### Moving kill links on HP-UX 11.x

Proceed as shown below on the system which you want to back up to move some links:

```
# The system will go from "run-level" 4 to "run-level 1"
# retaining the inetd, networking, swagentd services up.
# The state is called "minimum activity" for backup
# purposes (needs networking).
# IMPORTANT: ensure the links are present in /sbin/rc1.d before
# moving and they do have this exact name. You have to
# rename them for the rc0.d directory. Put them BELOW the
# lowest (original "/sbin/rc0.dKxx") "K...-link" in rc0.d
# Move K430dce K500inetd K660net K900swagentd into ../rc0.d BELOW
# the lowest kill link!!!
# echo "may need to be modified for this system"
# exit 1
#
cd /sbin/rc1.d
mv K430dce../rc0.d/K109dce
mv K500inetd../rc0.d/K110inetd
mv K660net../rc0.d/K116net
mv K900swagentd ../rc0.d/K120swagentd
```

### Windows manual disaster recovery preparation template

The template on the next page can be used to prepare for Windows Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery, as described in the [“Disaster recovery for Windows systems”](#) (page 27).

Client properties	computer name	
	hostname	
Drivers		
Windows Service Pack		
TCP/IP properties for IPv4	IP address	
	default gateway	
	subnet mask	
	DNS order	
TCP/IP properties for IPv6	IP address	
	subnet prefix length	
	default gateway	
	preferred DNS server	
	alternate DNS server	
Medium label / Barcode number		
Partition information and order	1st disk label	
	1st partition length	
	1st drive letter	
	1st filesystem	
	2nd disk label	

	2nd partition length	
	2nd drive letter	
	2nd filesystem	
	3rd disk label	
	3rd partition length	
	3rd drive letter	
	3rd filesystem	

## B Recovery to dissimilar hardware

**NOTE:** Recovery to dissimilar hardware is an extension of “Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery of a Windows system” (page 34). You should refer to that as well as the information here.

After hardware failure or a similar disaster, you may need to restore a backup to a system where some or all of the hardware is different from the original (**dissimilar hardware**).

Dissimilar hardware restore adds the following to the standard EADR and OBDR procedures:

1. At backup time, the disaster recovery module also collects network configuration information and hardware information.
2. It enables the injection of critical device drivers into the DR OS image, so that they are available during restore. You can also inject missing drivers manually at restore time if some are missing.
3. During restore, the network and hardware information is used to configure and map the network properly for the restored OS, and to detect critical hardware that is missing.

### When dissimilar hardware restore might be needed

- **Hardware failure**

Dissimilar hardware restore is needed when some of the boot-critical hardware (such as the storage controller, processor, or motherboard) fails and must be replaced with non-identical hardware.

- **Disaster**

Dissimilar hardware restore is needed after total machine disaster where:

- No matching machine can be found (because of limited budget, the failing machine's age or other causes).
- Down-time cannot be afforded; the system must be up and running immediately.

In these situations, the use of dissimilar hardware restore can mean lower budget cost since exact clones of the original systems are not needed.

- **Migration**

Dissimilar hardware restore is needed in the following situations:

- Moving to another machine (for example, to faster or newer hardware) where OS reinstallation and reconfiguration is not an option.
- Moving from a physical machine to a virtual environment or the other way round.  
From the disaster recovery module's point of view, a virtual environment is another hardware platform for which you need to provide critical drivers in order to restore a system backup taken on some other virtual or physical platform. Limitations and requirements listed below also apply to virtual environments.

### Overview

The phases of restore to dissimilar hardware are as described on page 54 with the following differences:

- **Phase 0:** Additional information is collected about the network configuration and the hardware.
- **Phase 1:** The machine is brought into a state where disaster recovery executables have access to disks, file systems, the network and WIN32 API. Restore critical devices are checked. If any drivers are missing, you are prompted to provide them.

- **Phase 2**, restoring the OS, is the same, but an extra sub-phase occurs after it:
  - **Phase 2a:** The restored operating system is prepared and adapted to the hardware, through injecting critical drivers, updating the registry and mapping the network.
- **Phase 3** is the same, in which data not restored in Phase 2 is restored.

## Requirements

- You must provide at least all boot-critical drivers (including network drivers) for the target machine. These drivers can be added directly to the image at image creation time (recommended) or loaded at restore time (during Phase 1). In addition, drivers of locally attached backup devices (such as a tape device) must also be available if a local restore is attempted.  
For more information see [“Drivers” \(page 119\)](#).
- Automatic network configuration restore for the restored OS requires network drivers to be present at restore time.
- The restore system must have at least the same number of disks (with the same or greater size) as the backup system did.
- The original OS should be supported on the target machine (server or workstation) by the hardware manufacturer.
- It is advisable for the system firmware of the target machine to be up-to-date before a dissimilar hardware restore.
- If you need to *disable* dissimilar hardware support during backup, edit the file `drm.cfg` on the system you want to back up and set the `enable_disshw` option to 0.
- The system must include at least one NTFS volume, which serves as a storage point for VSS purposes during the backup phase.

## Limitations

- The disaster recovery module only supports dissimilar hardware restores for VSS-based OS backups. However, VSS-based backup is enabled by default in Data Protector for the supported OS platforms.
- Dissimilar hardware support is provided only for DR OS-based disaster recovery solutions. This is only for following 32 and 64-bit (x64) OS versions (with latest service packs installed):
  - Windows Vista
  - Windows Server 2008
  - Windows 7
  - Windows Server 2008 R2
- The following OS platform restore combinations are supported:

From	To
64-bit OS platform	64-bit hardware
32-bit OS platform	32- or 64-bit hardware

- Dissimilar hardware restore of upgraded OSs is only supported with the “Generic” recovery mode option (see [“Recovering the system” \(page 119\)](#)).
- Network card teaming configurations are not supported. If you need them, you must reconfigure them after the OS is restored. The disaster recovery module only restores physical network card configurations.

- The disaster recovery module can only inject drivers for which an INF file is provided. Drivers that have their own installation procedures (such as graphics drivers) are not supported and cannot be injected during Phase 1 or Phase 2a. However, for boot-critical device drivers, manufacturers typically provide INF files.
- The target machine's disks should be kept attached to the same type of host adapter buses (such as SCSI or SAS), otherwise the restore may fail.

## Drivers

**NOTE:** The DR OS image includes a large database of generic critical drivers, especially for storage controllers. If you cannot find original drivers to inject, there is a good chance that generic ones already exist in the DR OS image.

To enable restore onto dissimilar hardware, drivers vital for the restore and boot of the new system must be available. You will need to provide the following drivers:

- For all storage controllers of the target system. This will enable the detection of the underlying storage at restore/boot time.
- Network card drivers to enable network restore and access to existing driver store locations, along with drivers for locally attached backup devices (such as tape drives) if a local restore is attempted.

Drivers for the original hardware can be included in the DR OS image during backup in the preparation phase (Phase 0), and you can add drivers for new hardware during the creation of the image. You also have the option of adding them manually during the restore process.

Although the disaster recovery module searches only for boot-critical drivers during the restore process, you can add additional non-boot-critical drivers in the DR OS image, which you can then inject during the restore using the "Load Drivers" Tasks menu option.

When the operating system has been booted you should install other missing hardware drivers. You can inject drivers from CD-ROM, DVD, USB key/drive, network shares, or any local folder.

## Preparation

### NOTE:

You need to perform this preparation after each hardware configuration change to the system.

Preparation is the same as for EADR (see "Preparation" (page 38)) and OBDR (see "Preparation" (page 50)) with the following changes:

- The disaster recovery module also collects network configuration and hardware information.
- Critical device drivers (such as for storage, network or tape) should be present, so the disaster recovery module can inject the drivers into the DR OS image at the image creation time. See "Drivers" (page 119).

## Recovery

### Recovering the system

If you enabled dissimilar hardware restore in the Recovery Options page of the HP Data Protector Disaster Recovery GUI (see [Step 4](#)), the target system is scanned for missing drivers during the recovery process. If any restore-critical devices (such as storage adapters, tape and network devices, or disk controllers) have missing drivers, you are prompted to load the missing drivers in order to proceed with the restore process.

Follow these steps:

1. When the message `Load missing driver(s)?` appears during the disaster recovery procedure, click **Yes** to start the Dissimilar Hardware wizard. If you click **No**, the driver injection procedure is skipped.

2. In the Select Devices page, select the devices, for which you want to load drivers. Click **Next**.
3. In the Driver Search Locations page, specify the locations on the running system where you keep your drivers. You can use the **Search tree depth** option to adjust the search to your system specifics. The specified locations will be searched for the missing drivers. Click **Next**.

---

**NOTE:** You can remove the specified location from the search list by right-clicking this location and then selecting **Remove**.

---

4. After the specified locations are searched for the missing drivers, the following results are possible:
  - The device driver is found: the full path to the corresponding driver information file (\*.inf) is specified in the Driver path text box. If this driver is appropriate and click **Next**.
  - The device driver is not found: the Driver path text box is empty. Do one of the following:
    - If you want to search for a different driver, click **Browse**. In the Browse file dialog, select the device driver path and then click **Next**.
    - If you do not want to load a driver to this device, you can leave the Driver path text box empty and click **Next** to proceed to the next page, or, you can click **Skip** to exit the wizard.

---

**NOTE:** If you specify a driver that does not correspond to the device, this driver is indicated as being invalid and you are not able to load it. If the driver is not appropriate, you can change it or skip loading.

---

5. In the Driver Installation Progress page, you can view whether the device drivers were loaded successfully. If any errors are reported, you can try to reload the drivers by clicking **Retry**. Click **Finish**.

## Restoring and preparing the OS

The process of restoring the OS is the same as in the standard EADR (from [Step 5](#)) and OBDR (from [Step 6](#)) processes. After it, the recovery process prepares and adapts the restored OS to the dissimilar hardware to prepare the OS for the restore of applications and files. This includes injecting boot-critical drivers, updating the registry of the restored OS and mapping the network.

Since all boot-critical drivers should exist (loaded into the running DR OS image during Phase 0 or added manually during the restore of the OS), injecting them occurs automatically. However your intervention may be required to correct the network mappings.

## Correcting network mappings

After you finished with restoring to dissimilar hardware, disaster recovery module checks, whether the network adapters on the system you are recovering are different from the network adapters of the original system. The disaster recovery module cannot always map the network configuration of the original system to the network configuration of the target system on its own. This happens, for example, when the target system has one network card and the original system has two or more network cards, or when you add additional network adapters to the target system. When such difference is detected or if the correct network mappings cannot be determined automatically, you have an option to map the original network adapters to the network adapters discovered on the target system.

---

**NOTE:** The network mapping occurs only for available network adapters. Network adapters without drivers cannot be mapped. Because of this, you should load network card drivers before the restore process begins.

---



1. In the Network Adapter Mapping page, select the network adapters of the original system in the Original network adapters drop-down list. In the Current network adapters drop-down list, select one of the network adapters available on the target system. Click **Add mapping**. The mapping you created is added to the list.

---

**NOTE:** You can remove a mapping from the list by right-clicking the mapping and then selecting **Remove**.

---

2. When you mapped all the network drivers you wanted, click **Finish**.

### After the OS is successfully restored

Dissimilar hardware restore resets the OS activation. Once the OS is successfully restored, you should:

- Re-activate the OS.
- Check and, if needed, reinstall missing system drivers.

### Restoring user and application data

This phase is the same as for EADR (see [Step 11](#)).

---

**NOTE:**

Third-party application services and drivers may fail to load once the OS is booted. These applications will probably need to be reinstalled, reconfigured or removed from the current system if they are not needed.

---

## Recovery of a physical system to a virtual machine (P2V)

Data Protector supports recovery to virtualization environments which provide support for the original operating system, such as VMware vSphere, Microsoft Hyper-V, or Citrix XenServer.

### Prerequisites

The target virtual machine must meet the following requirements:

- The guest operating system must be of the same type as the original one (Windows, Linux).
- The virtual machine must have the same or larger number of disks than the original system.
- The disks must have the same or larger size as their original counterparts.
- The disk order must be the same as on the original system.
- The amount of memory assigned to a virtual machine may have an impact on the recovery process, therefore it is recommended to allocate at least 1 GB of memory to the virtual machine.
- The virtual video card memory size must meet the requirement of the original system based on the display resolution of the original system. If possible, use automatic settings.
- Add the same number of network adapters as on the original machine. The adapters must be connected to the same network as the original ones.

### Procedure

Boot the virtual machine using the DR OS image and follow the standard disaster recovery procedure to dissimilar hardware.

## Recovery of a virtual machine to a physical system (V2P)

Disaster recovery of a virtual machine to a physical system is performed using the standard disaster recovery to dissimilar hardware.

---

# Glossary

## A

<b>access rights</b>	See user rights.
<b>ACSLs</b>	(StorageTek specific term) The Automated Cartridge System Library Server (ACSLs) software that manages the Automated Cartridge System (ACS).
<b>Active Directory</b>	(Windows specific term) The directory service in a Windows network. It contains information about resources on the network and makes them accessible to users and applications. The directory services provide a consistent way to name, describe, locate, access and manage resources regardless of the physical system they reside on.
<b>AES 256-bit encryption</b>	Data Protector software encryption, based on the AES-CTR (Advanced Encryption Standard in Counter Mode) encryption algorithm that uses random keys of 256-bit length. The same key is used for both encryption and decryption. With AES 256-bit encryption, data is encrypted before it is transferred over a network and before it is written to media.
<b>AML</b>	(ADIC/GRAU specific term) Automated Mixed-Media library.
<b>AMU</b>	(ADIC/GRAU specific term) Archive Management Unit.
<b>application agent</b>	A component needed on a client to back up or restore online database integrations. See also Disk Agent.
<b>application system</b>	(ZDB specific term) A system the application or database runs on. The application or database data is located on source volumes. See also backup system and source volume.
<b>archive logging</b>	(Lotus Domino Server specific term) Lotus Domino Server database mode where transaction log files are overwritten only after they have been backed up.
<b>archived redo log</b>	(Oracle specific term) Also called offline redo log. If the Oracle database operates in the ARCHIVELOG mode, as each online redo log is filled, it is copied to an archived log destination. This copy is the archived redo log. The presence or absence of an archived redo log is determined by the mode the database is using: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ARCHIVELOG - The filled online redo log files are archived before they are reused. The database can be recovered if an instance or a disk fails. A "hot" backup can be performed only when the database is running in this mode.</li><li>• NOARCHIVELOG - The filled online redo log files are not archived.</li></ul> See also online redo log.
<b>ASR set</b>	A collection of files stored on several diskettes, required for proper reconfiguration of the replacement disk (disk partitioning and logical volume configuration) and automatic recovery of the original system configuration and user data that was backed up during the full client backup. These files are stored as an ASR archive file on the Cell Manager in the directory <code>Data_Protector_program_data\Config\Server\dr\asr</code> (Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2012), <code>Data_Protector_home\Config\Server\dr\asr</code> (other Windows systems), or <code>/etc/opt/omni/server/dr/asr</code> (UNIX systems) as well as on the backup medium. After a disaster occurs, the ASR archive file is extracted to diskettes which you need to perform ASR.
<b>audit logs</b>	Data files to which auditing information is stored.
<b>audit report</b>	User-readable output of auditing information created from data stored in audit log files.
<b>auditing information</b>	Data about every backup session that was performed over an extended, user-defined period for the whole Data Protector cell.
<b>autochanger</b>	See library.
<b>autoloader</b>	See library.
<b>Automatic Storage Management (ASM)</b>	(Oracle specific term) A filesystem and volume manager integrated into Oracle which manages Oracle database files. It eliminates complexity associated with data and disk management and optimizes performance by providing striping and mirroring capabilities.

<b>automigration</b>	<i>(VLS specific term)</i> The functionality that allows data backups to be first made to the VLS' virtual tapes and then migrated to physical tapes (one virtual tape emulating one physical tape) without using an intermediate backup application. See also Virtual Library System (VLS) and virtual tape.
<b>auxiliary disk</b>	A bootable disk that has a minimal operating system with networking and Data Protector Disk Agent installed. It can be carried around and used to boot the target system in Phase 1 of Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery of UNIX clients.
<b>B</b>	
<b>BACKINT</b>	<i>(SAP R/3 specific term)</i> SAP R/3 backup programs can call the Data Protector backint interface program via an open interface, which enables them to communicate with Data Protector software. For backup and restore, SAP R/3 programs issue orders for the Data Protector backint interface.
<b>backup API</b>	The Oracle interface between the Oracle backup/restore utility and the backup/restore media management layer. The interface defines a set of routines to allow the reading and writing of data to the backup media, the creation, searching and removing the backup files.
<b>backup chain</b>	See restore chain.
<b>backup device</b>	A device configured for use with Data Protector, which can write data to and read data from storage media. This can be, for example, a standalone DDS/DAT drive or a library.
<b>backup generation</b>	One backup generation includes one full backup and all incremental backups until the next full backup.
<b>backup ID</b>	An identifier of an integration object that equals the session ID of the backup of this object. The backup ID is preserved when an object is copied, exported, or imported.
<b>backup object</b>	A backup unit that contains all items backed up from one disk volume (logical disk or mount point). The backed up items can be any number of files, directories, or the entire disk or mount point. Additionally, a backup object can be a database/application entity or a disk image. A backup object is defined by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Client name: Hostname of the Data Protector client where the backup object resides.</li> <li>• Mount point: For filesystem objects — the access point in a directory structure on the client where the backup object is located (drive on Windows and mount point on UNIX). For integration objects — backup stream identification, indicating the backed up database/application items.</li> <li>• Description: For filesystem objects — uniquely defines objects with identical client name and mount point. For integration objects — displays the integration type (for example, SAP or Lotus).</li> <li>• Type: Backup object type. For filesystem objects — filesystem type (for example, WinFS). For integration objects — "Bar".</li> </ul>
<b>backup owner</b>	Each backup object in the IDB has an owner. The default owner of a backup is the user who starts the backup session.
<b>backup session</b>	A process that creates a copy of data on storage media. The activities are specified in a backup specification or an interactive session. All clients configured in one backup specification are backed up together in one backup session using the same backup type. The result of a backup session is a set of media, which was written to, also called the backup or media set. See also backup specification, full backup, and incremental backup.
<b>backup set</b>	A complete set of integration objects associated with a backup.
<b>backup set</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> A logical grouping of backed up files that are created using the RMAN backup command. A backup set is a complete set of files associated with a backup. The files can be multiplexed to increase performance. A backup set contains either datafiles or archived logs, but not both together.
<b>backup specification</b>	A list of objects to be backed up, together with a set of devices or drives to be used, backup options for all objects in the specification, and days and time that you want backups to be performed. The objects are entire disks/volumes or parts of them such as files, directories, or

even the Windows Registry for example. File selection lists such as include-lists and exclude-lists can be specified.

<b>backup system</b>	<p>(ZDB specific term) A system connected to a disk array together with one or multiple application systems. The backup system is typically connected to a disk array to create target volumes (a replica) and is used for mounting the target volumes (the replica).</p> <p>See also application system, target volume, and replica.</p>
<b>backup types</b>	See incremental backup, differential backup, transaction backup, full backup, and delta backup.
<b>backup view</b>	<p>Data Protector provides different views for backup specifications:</p> <p>By Type - according to the type of data available for backups/templates. Default view.</p> <p>By Group - according to the group to which backup specifications/templates belong.</p> <p>By Name - according to the name of backup specifications/templates.</p> <p>By Manager - if you are running MoM, you can also set the Backup view according to the Cell Manager to which backup specifications/templates belong.</p>
<b>BC</b>	<p>(EMC Symmetrix specific term) Business Continuance are processes that allow customers to access and manage instant copies of EMC Symmetrix standard devices.</p> <p>See also BCV.</p>
<b>BC Process</b>	<p>(EMC Symmetrix specific term) A protected storage environment solution that has defined specially configured EMC Symmetrix devices as mirrors or Business Continuance Volumes to protect data on EMC Symmetrix standard devices.</p> <p>See also BCV.</p>
<b>BCV</b>	<p>(EMC Symmetrix specific term) Business Continuance Volumes, or BCV devices, are dedicated SLDs that are pre-configured in the ICDA on which the business continuation operation runs. BCV devices are assigned separate SCSI addresses, differing from the addresses used by the SLDs they mirror. The BCV devices are used as splittable mirrors of the primary EMC Symmetrix SLDs that need to be protected.</p> <p>See also BC and BC Process.</p>
<b>Boolean operators</b>	The Boolean operators for the full text search functionality of the Data Protector Help system are AND, OR, NOT, and NEAR. Used when searching, they enable you to define your query precisely by creating a relationship between search terms. If no operator is specified in a multi-word search, AND is used by default. For example, the query manual disaster recovery is equivalent to manual AND disaster AND recovery.
<b>boot volume/disk/partition</b>	A volume/disk/partition with files required for the initial step of the boot process. Microsoft terminology defines the boot volume/disk/partition as a volume/disk/partition containing the operating system files.
<b>BRARCHIVE</b>	<p>(SAP R/3 specific term) An SAP R/3 backup tool that allows you to archive redo log files. BRARCHIVE also saves all the logs and profiles of the archiving process.</p> <p>See also BRBACKUP and BRRESTORE.</p>
<b>BRBACKUP</b>	<p>(SAP R/3 specific term) An SAP R/3 backup tool that allows an online or offline backup of the control file, of individual data files, or of all tablespaces and, if necessary, of the online redo log files.</p> <p>See also BRARCHIVE and BRRESTORE.</p>
<b>BRRESTORE</b>	<p>(SAP R/3 specific term) An SAP R/3 tool that can be used to restore files of the following type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Database data files, control files, and online redo log files saved with BRBACKUP</li><li>• Redo log files archived with BRARCHIVE</li><li>• Non-database files saved with BRBACKUP</li></ul> <p>You can specify files, tablespaces, complete backups, log sequence numbers of redo log files, or the session ID of the backup.</p> <p>See also BRBACKUP and BRARCHIVE.</p>
<b>BSM</b>	The Data Protector Backup Session Manager controls the backup session. This process always runs on the Cell Manager system.

## C

<b>CAP</b>	<i>(StorageTek specific term)</i> Cartridge Access Port is a port built into the door panel of a library. The purpose is to enter or eject media.
<b>catalog protection</b>	Defines how long information about backed up data (such as file names and file versions) is kept in the IDB. <i>See also</i> data protection.
<b>CDB</b>	The Catalog Database is a part of the IDB that contains information about backup, restore, object copy, object consolidation, object verification, and media management sessions. Depending on the selected logging level, it also contains file names and file versions. This part of the database is always local to the cell. <i>See also</i> MMDB.
<b>CDF file</b>	<i>(UNIX specific term)</i> A Context Dependent File is a file consisting of several files grouped under the same pathname. The system ordinarily selects one of the files using the context of the process. This mechanism allows machine dependent executables, system data, and device files to work correctly from all hosts in a cluster while using the same pathname.
<b>cell</b>	A set of systems that are under the control of a Cell Manager. The cell typically represents the systems on a site or an organizational entity, which are connected to the same LAN or SAN. Central control is available to administer the backup and restore policies and tasks.
<b>Cell Manager</b>	The main system in the cell where the essential Data Protector software is installed and from which all backup and restore activities are managed. The GUI used for management tasks can be located on a different system. Each cell has one Cell Manager system.
<b>centralized licensing</b>	Data Protector allows you to configure centralized licensing for the whole enterprise environment consisting of several cells. All Data Protector licenses are installed and kept on the Enterprise Cell Manager system. You can then allocate licenses to specific cells to suit your needs. <i>See also</i> MoM.
<b>Centralized Media Management Database (CMMDB)</b>	<i>See</i> CMMDB.
<b>Certificate Server</b>	A Windows Certificate Server can be installed and configured to provide certificates for clients. It provides customizable services for issuing and managing certificates for the enterprise. These services issue, revoke, and manage certificates employed in public key-based cryptography technologies.
<b>Change Journal</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> A Windows filesystem feature that logs a record of each change as it occurs to the files and directories on a local NTFS volume.
<b>Change Log Provider</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> A module that can be queried to determine which objects on a filesystem have been created, modified, or deleted.
<b>channel</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> An Oracle Recovery Manager resource allocation. Every allocated channel starts a new Oracle process, which performs backup, restore, and recovery actions. The type of channel allocated determines the type of media used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• type 'disk'</li> <li>• type 'sbt_tape'</li> </ul> If the specified channel is of type 'sbt_tape' and Oracle is integrated with Data Protector, the server process will attempt to read backups from or write data files to Data Protector.
<b>circular logging</b>	<i>(Microsoft Exchange Server and Lotus Domino Server specific term)</i> Circular logging is a Microsoft Exchange Server database and Lotus Domino Server database mode, in which the transaction log file contents are periodically overwritten after the corresponding data is committed to the database. Circular logging reduces disk storage space requirements.
<b>client backup</b>	A backup of all volumes (filesystems) mounted on a Data Protector client. What is actually backed up depends on how you select objects in a backup specification: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you select the check box next to the client system name, a single backup object of the Client System type is created. As a result, at the time of the backup, Data Protector first</li> </ul>

detects all volumes that are mounted on the selected client and then backs them up. On Windows clients, CONFIGURATION is also backed up.

- If you individually select all volumes that are mounted on the client system, a separate backup object of the Filesystem type is created for each volume. As a result, at the time of the backup, only the selected volumes are backed up. Volumes that have been potentially mounted on the client after the backup specification was created are not backed up.

<b>client or client system</b>	Any system configured with any Data Protector functionality and configured in a cell.
<b>cluster continuous replication</b>	<p>(Microsoft Exchange Server specific term) Cluster continuous replication (CCR) is a high availability solution that uses cluster management and failover options to create and maintain an exact copy (CCR copy) of a storage group. A storage group is replicated to a separate server. CCR removes any single point of failure in your Exchange back-end servers. You can perform backups using VSS on your passive Exchange Server node where a CCR copy is located and thus reducing the load on the active node.</p> <p>A CCR copy is used for disaster recovery since you can switch to the CCR copy in a few seconds. A replicated storage group is represented as a new instance of Exchange writer called Exchange Replication Service and can be backed up (using VSS) like an ordinary storage group.</p> <p>See also Exchange Replication Service and local continuous replication.</p>
<b>cluster-aware application</b>	It is an application that supports the cluster Application Programming Interface. Each cluster-aware application declares its own critical resources (disk volumes (on Microsoft Cluster Server), volume groups (on MC/ServiceGuard), application services, IP names and addresses, and so on).
<b>CMD script for Informix Server</b>	(Informix Server specific term) A Windows CMD script that is created in INFORMIXDIR when an Informix Server database is configured. The CMD script is a set of system commands that export environment variables for Informix Server.
<b>CMMDB</b>	<p>The Data Protector Centralized Media Management Database (CMMDB) is the result of merging MMDBs from several cells in the MoM environment. It allows you to share high-end devices and media across multiple cells in a MoM environment. One cell can control the robotics, serving the devices that are connected to systems in other cells. The CMMDB must reside on the Manager-of-Managers. A reliable network connection between the MoM cell and the other Data Protector cells is highly recommended</p> <p>See also MoM.</p>
<b>COM+ Class Registration Database</b>	(Windows specific term) The COM+ Class Registration Database and the Windows Registry store application attributes, class attributes, and computer-level attributes. This guarantees consistency among these attributes and provides common operation on top of these attributes.
<b>command device</b>	(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term) A dedicated volume in the disk array which acts as the interface between a management application and the disk array's storage system. It cannot be used for data storage and only accepts requests for operations that are then executed by the disk array.
<b>Command View VLS</b>	<p>(VLS specific term) A web browser-based GUI that is used to configure, manage, and monitor the VLS through a LAN.</p> <p>See also Virtual Library System (VLS).</p>
<b>command-line interface (CLI)</b>	A set of DOS and UNIX like commands that you can use in shell scripts to perform Data Protector configuration, backup, restore, and management tasks.
<b>concurrency</b>	See Disk Agent concurrency.
<b>container</b>	(HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term) Space on a disk array, which is pre-allocated for later use as a standard snapshot, vsnap, or snapclone.
<b>control file</b>	(Oracle and SAP R/3 specific term) An Oracle data file that contains entries specifying the physical structure of the database. It provides database consistency information used for recovery.
<b>copy set</b>	<p>(HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term) A pair that consists of the source volumes on a local P6000 EVA and their replica on a remote P6000 EVA.</p> <p>See also source volume, replica, and HP Continuous Access + Business Copy (CA+BC) P6000 EVA.</p>
<b>CRS</b>	The Cell Request Server process (service), which runs on the Data Protector Cell Manager, and starts and controls the backup and restore sessions. The service is started as soon as Data Protector



is installed on the Cell Manager. On Windows systems, the CRS runs under the account of the user specified at installation time. On UNIX systems, it runs under the account `root`.

**CSM** The Data Protector Copy and Consolidation Session Manager process controls the object copy and object consolidation sessions and runs on the Cell Manager system.

## D

**data file** (*Oracle and SAP R/3 specific term*) A physical file created by Oracle that contains data structures such as tables and indexes. A data file can only belong to one Oracle database.

**data protection** Defines how long the backed up data on media remains protected, that is, Data Protector will not overwrite it. When the protection expires, Data Protector will be able to reuse the media in one of the next backup sessions.  
*See also* catalog protection.

**data replication (DR) group** (*HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term*) A logical grouping of HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family virtual disks. It can contain up to eight copy sets provided they have common characteristics and share a common HP CA P6000 EVA log.  
*See also* copy set.

**data stream** Sequence of data transferred over the communication channel.

**Data\_Protector\_home** A reference to the directory containing Data Protector program files (on Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2012) or the directory containing Data Protector program files and data files (on other Windows operating systems). Its default path is `%ProgramFiles%\OmniBack`, but the path can be changed in the Data Protector Setup Wizard at installation time.  
*See also* Data\_Protector\_program\_data.

**Data\_Protector\_program\_data** A reference to the directory containing Data Protector data files on Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2012. Its default path is `%ProgramData%\OmniBack`, but the path can be changed in the Data Protector Setup Wizard at installation time.  
*See also* Data\_Protector\_home.

**database library** A Data Protector set of routines that enables data transfer between Data Protector and a server of an online database integration, for example, Oracle Server.

**database parallelism** More than one database is backed up at a time if the number of available devices allows you to perform backups in parallel.

**database server** A computer with a large database stored on it, such as the SAP R/3 or Microsoft SQL database. A server has a database that can be accessed by clients.

**Dbobject** (*Informix Server specific term*) An Informix Server physical database object. It can be a blob space, db space, or logical log file.

**DC directory** The Detail Catalog (DC) directory contains DC binary files, which store information about file versions. It represents the DCBF part of the IDB, which occupies approximately 80% of the IDB. The default DC directory is called the `dcbf` directory and is located on the Cell Manager in the directory `Data_Protector_program_data\db40` (Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2012), `Data_Protector_home\db40` (other Windows systems), or `/var/opt/omni/server/db40` (UNIX systems). You can create more DC directories and use a custom location. Up to 50 DC directories are supported per cell. The default maximum size of a DC directory is 16 GB.

**DCBF** The Detail Catalog Binary Files (DCBF) part of the IDB stores information about file versions and attributes. It occupies approximately 80% of the IDB. One DC binary file is created for each Data Protector medium used for backup. Its maximum size is limited by the filesystem settings.

**delta backup** A delta backup is a backup containing all the changes made to the database from the last backup of any type.  
*See also* backup types.

**device** A physical unit which contains either just a drive or a more complex unit such as a library.

<b>device chain</b>	A device chain consists of several standalone devices configured for sequential use. When a medium in one device gets full, the backup automatically continues on a medium in the next device in the device chain.
<b>device group</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix specific term)</i> A logical unit representing several EMC Symmetrix devices. A device cannot belong to more than a single device group. All devices in a device group must be on the same EMC Symmetrix unit. You can use a device group to identify and work with a subset of the available EMC Symmetrix devices.
<b>device streaming</b>	A device is streaming if it can feed enough data to the medium to keep it moving forward continuously. Otherwise, the tape has to be stopped, the device waits for more data, reverses the tape a little and resumes to write to the tape, and so on. In other words, if the data rate written to the tape is less or equal the data rate which can be delivered to the device by the computer system, then the device is streaming. Streaming significantly improves the performance of the device and use of space.
<b>DHCP server</b>	A system running the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) providing dynamic IP address assignment and network configuration for DHCP clients.
<b>differential backup</b>	An incremental backup that backs up changes made since the last full backup. To perform this type of backup, specify the Incr1 backup type. <i>See also</i> incremental backup.
<b>differential backup</b>	<i>(Microsoft SQL Server specific term)</i> A database backup that records only the data changes made to the database after the last full database backup. <i>See also</i> backup types.
<b>differential database backup</b>	A differential database backup records only those data changes made to the database after the last full database backup.
<b>directory junction</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> Directory junctions use the reparse point concept of Windows. An NTFS 5 directory junction allows you to redirect a directory/file request to another location.
<b>disaster recovery</b>	A process to restore a client's main system disk to a state close to the time when a (full) backup was performed.
<b>disaster recovery operating system</b>	<i>See</i> DR OS.
<b>Disk Agent</b>	A component needed on a client to back it up and restore it. The Disk Agent controls reading from and writing to a disk. During a backup session, the Disk Agent reads data from a disk and sends it to the Media Agent, which then moves it to the device. During a restore session the Disk Agent receives data from the Media Agent and writes it to the disk. During an object verification session the Disk Agent receives data from the Media Agent and performs the verification process, but no data is written to disk.
<b>Disk Agent concurrency</b>	The number of Disk Agents that are allowed to send data to one Media Agent concurrently.
<b>disk group</b>	<i>(Veritas Volume Manager specific term)</i> The basic unit of data storage in VxVM system. A disk group can consist of one or more physical volumes. There can be more than one disk group on the system.
<b>disk image backup</b>	A high-speed backup where Data Protector backs up files as bitmap images. A disk image backup does not track the files and directory structure stored on the disk, but stores a disk image structure on byte level. You can perform a disk image backup of either specific disk sections or a complete disk.
<b>disk quota</b>	A concept to manage disk space consumption for all or a subset of users on a computer system. This concept is used by several operating system platforms.
<b>disk staging</b>	The process of backing up data in several phases to improve the performance of backups and restores, reduce costs of storing the backed up data, and increase the data availability and accessibility for restore. The backup stages consist of backing up data to one media type first (for example disk) and later copying it to a different media type (for example tape).
<b>distributed file media format</b>	A media format, available with the file library, which supports a space efficient type of synthetic backup called virtual full backup. Using this format is a prerequisite for virtual full backup. <i>See also</i> virtual full backup.



<b>Distributed File System (DFS)</b>	A service that connects file shares into a single namespace. The file shares can reside on the same or on different computers. DFS provides client access to the resources in a location-transparent manner.
<b>DMZ</b>	The Demilitarized Zone (DMZ) is a network inserted as a "neutral zone" between a company's private network (intranet) and the outside public network (Internet). It prevents outside users from getting direct access to company servers in the intranet.
<b>DNS server</b>	In the DNS client-server model, this is the server containing information about a portion of the DNS database that makes computer names available to client resolvers querying for name resolution across the Internet.
<b>domain controller</b>	A server in a network that is responsible for user security and verifying passwords within a group of other servers.
<b>DR image</b>	Data required for temporary disaster recovery operating system (DR OS) installation and configuration.
<b>DR OS</b>	An operating system environment in which disaster recovery runs. It provides Data Protector with a basic runtime environment (disk, network, tape, and filesystem access). It has to be installed on disk or loaded into memory and configured before the Data Protector disaster recovery can be performed. DR OS can be either temporary or active. A temporary DR OS is used exclusively as a host environment for some other operating system restore along with the target operating system configuration data. It is deleted after the target system is restored to the original system configuration. An active DR OS not only hosts the Data Protector disaster recovery process but can also be a part of the restored system because it replaces its own configuration data with the original configuration data.
<b>drive</b>	A physical unit that receives data from a computer system and can write it onto a magnetic medium (typically a tape drive). It can also read the data from the medium and send it to the computer system.
<b>drive index</b>	A number that identifies the mechanical position of a drive inside a library device. This number is used by the robotic control to access a drive.
<b>drive-based encryption</b>	Data Protector drive-based encryption uses the encryption functionality of the drive. While performing the backup, the drive encrypts both the data and the metadata that is written to the medium.
<b>E</b>	
<b>EMC Symmetrix Agent</b>	A Data Protector software module that prepares the EMC Symmetrix environment for backup and restore operations.
<b>emergency boot file</b>	<i>(Informix Server specific term)</i> The Informix Server configuration file <code>ixbar.server_id</code> that resides in the directory <code>INFORMIXDIR/etc</code> (on Windows) or <code>INFORMIXDIR/etc</code> (on UNIX). <code>INFORMIXDIR</code> is the Informix Server home directory and <code>server_id</code> is the value of the <code>SERVERNUM</code> configuration parameter. Each line of the emergency boot file corresponds to one backup object.
<b>encrypted control communication</b>	Data Protector secure communication between the clients in the Data Protector cell is based on Secure Socket Layer (SSL) that uses SSLv3 algorithms to encrypt control communication. Control communication in a Data Protector cell is all communication between Data Protector processes, except the data transfer from Disk Agent (and Integrations) to Media Agent, and the other way round.
<b>encryption key</b>	A 256-bit randomly generated number used by the Data Protector encryption algorithm to encode information during backups for which AES 256-bit software encryption or drive-based encryption has been specified. The same key is used for subsequent decryption of the information. Encryption keys for a Data Protector cell are stored in a central keystore on the Cell Manager.
<b>encryption KeyID-StoreID</b>	Combined identifier used by the Data Protector Key Management Server to identify and administer encryption keys used by Data Protector. <code>KeyID</code> identifies the key within the keystore. <code>StoreID</code> identifies the keystore on the Cell Manager. If Data Protector has been upgraded from an earlier version with encryption functionality, there may several <code>StoreIDs</code> used on the same Cell Manager.

<b>enhanced incremental backup</b>	Conventional incremental backup backs up files that have changed since a previous backup, but has certain limitations in detection of changes. Unlike conventional incremental backup, enhanced incremental backup reliably detects and backs up also renamed and moved files, as well as files with changes in attributes.
<b>enterprise backup environment</b>	Several cells can be grouped together and managed from a central cell. The enterprise backup environment includes all clients located in several Data Protector cells which are managed and administered from a central cell using the Manager-of-Managers concept. <i>See also</i> MoM.
<b>Event Log (Data Protector Event Log)</b>	A central repository of all Data Protector-related notifications. By default, all notifications are sent to the Event Log. The events are logged on the Cell Manager into the file <code>Data_Protector_program_data\log\server\Ob2EventLog.txt</code> (Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2012), <code>Data_Protector_home\log\server\Ob2EventLog.txt</code> (other Windows systems), or <code>/var/opt/omni/server/log/Ob2EventLog.txt</code> (UNIX systems). The Event Log is accessible only to users of the Data Protector Admin user group and to users who are granted the Data Protector Reporting and notifications user rights. You can view or delete all events in the Event Log.
<b>Event Logs</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> Files in which Windows logs all events, such as the starting or stopping of services and the logging on and off of users. Data Protector can back up Windows Event Logs as part of the Windows configuration backup.
<b>Exchange Replication Service</b>	<i>(Microsoft Exchange Server specific term)</i> The Microsoft Exchange Server service that represents storage groups that were replicated using either local continuous replication (LCR) or cluster continuous replication (CCR) technology. <i>See also</i> cluster continuous replication and local continuous replication.
<b>exchanger</b>	Also referred to as SCSI Exchanger. <i>See also</i> library.
<b>exporting media</b>	A process that removes all data about backup sessions, such as systems, objects, and file names, which reside on the media from the IDB. Information about the media and their relation to a pool is also removed from the IDB. The data on the media remains unchanged. <i>See also</i> importing media.
<b>Extensible Storage Engine (ESE)</b>	<i>(Microsoft Exchange Server specific term)</i> A database technology used as a storage system for information exchange in Microsoft Exchange Server.
<b>F</b>	
<b>failover</b>	Transferring of the most important cluster data, called group (on Windows) or package (on UNIX) from one cluster node to another. A failover can occur mostly because of software or hardware failures or maintenance on the primary node.
<b>failover</b>	<i>(HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term)</i> An operation that reverses the roles of source and destination in HP Continuous Access + Business Copy (CA+BC) P6000 EVA configurations. <i>See also</i> HP Continuous Access + Business Copy (CA+BC) P6000 EVA.
<b>FC bridge</b>	<i>See</i> Fibre Channel bridge.
<b>Fibre Channel</b>	An ANSI standard for high-speed computer interconnection. Using either optical or copper cables, it allows the high speed bi-directional transmission of large data files and can be deployed between sites kilometers apart. Fibre Channel connects nodes using three physical topologies: point-to-point, loop, and switched.
<b>Fibre Channel bridge</b>	A Fibre Channel bridge or multiplexer provides the ability to migrate existing parallel SCSI devices, like RAID arrays, solid state disks (SSD), and tape libraries to a Fibre Channel environment. On one side of the bridge or multiplexer there is a Fibre Channel interface while on the other side there are parallel SCSI ports. The bridge or multiplexer enables SCSI packets to be moved between the Fibre Channel and parallel SCSI devices.
<b>file depot</b>	A file containing the data from a backup to a file library device.
<b>file jukebox device</b>	A device residing on disk consisting of multiple slots used to store file media.
<b>file library device</b>	A device which resides on a disk emulating a library with several media, hence containing multiple files, referred to as file depots.

<b>File Replication Service (FRS)</b>	A Windows service that replicates the domain controller store logon scripts and group policies. FRS also enables replication of Distributed File System (DFS) shares between systems and allows any server to perform replication activity.
<b>file tree walk</b>	( <i>Windows specific term</i> ) The process of traversing a filesystem to determine which objects have been created, modified, or deleted.
<b>file version</b>	The same file can be backed up multiple times in case of full backups and incremental backups (if the file changed). If the log level ALL is selected for backup, Data Protector retains one entry in the IDB for the filename itself and one for each version (date/time) of the file.
<b>filesystem</b>	The organization of files on a hard disk. A filesystem is backed up so that the file attributes and the file contents are stored on the backup media.
<b>first-level mirror</b>	( <i>HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term</i> ) A mirror of an internal disk (LDEV) of a disk array of the HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family which can be further mirrored itself, producing second-level mirrors. For Data Protector zero downtime backup and instant recovery purposes, only first-level mirrors can be used. See also primary volume and mirror unit (MU) number.
<b>flash recovery area</b>	( <i>Oracle specific term</i> ) A directory, filesystem, or Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group managed by Oracle that serves as a centralized storage area for files related to backup, restore, and database recovery (recovery files). See also recovery files.
<b>fnames.dat</b>	The <code>fnames.dat</code> files of the IDB contain information on the names of the backed up files. Typically, these files occupy about 20% of the IDB, if filenames are stored.
<b>formatting</b>	A process that erases any data contained on a medium and prepares it for use with Data Protector. Information about media (medium ID, description, and location) is saved in the IDB as well as on the respective media (media header). Data Protector media with protected data are not formatted until the protection expires or the media are unprotected/recycled.
<b>free pool</b>	An auxiliary source of media for use by media pools when they run out of media. The media pools must be configured to use free pools.
<b>full backup</b>	A backup in which all selected objects are backed up, whether or not they have been recently modified. See also backup types.
<b>full database backup</b>	A backup of all data in a database, not only the data that has been changed after the last (full or incremental) backup of the database. A full database backup does not depend on any other backup.
<b>full mailbox backup</b>	A full mailbox backup is a backup of the entire mailbox content.
<b>full ZDB</b>	A ZDB-to-tape or ZDB-to-disk+tape session in which all selected objects are streamed to tape, even if there are no changes from the previous backup. See also incremental ZDB.

## G

<b>global options file</b>	A file that allows you to customize Data Protector. It explains the global options, which cover various aspects of Data Protector, typically time-outs and limits, and affect the entire Data Protector cell. The file is located on the Cell Manager in the directory <code>Data_Protector_program_data\Config\Server\Options</code> (Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2012), <code>Data_Protector_home\Config\Server\Options</code> (other Windows systems), or <code>/etc/opt/omni/server/options</code> (HP-UX and Linux systems).
<b>group</b>	( <i>Microsoft Cluster Server specific term</i> ) A collection of resources (for example disk volumes, application services, IP names, and addresses) that are needed to run a specific cluster-aware applications.
<b>GUI</b>	A graphical user interface provided by Data Protector for easy access to all configuration, administration, and operation tasks. Besides the original Data Protector GUI that runs on Windows, Data Protector also provides a Java-based graphical user interface with the same look and feel, which runs on numerous platforms.

## H

<b>hard recovery</b>	<i>(Microsoft Exchange Server specific term)</i> A Microsoft Exchange Server database recovery that is performed after a restore by the database engine, using transaction log files.
<b>heartbeat</b>	A cluster data set with a time stamp carrying information about the operational status of a particular cluster node. This data set or packet is distributed among all cluster nodes.
<b>Hierarchical Storage Management (HSM)</b>	A method for optimizing the use of expensive hard disk storage by migrating less frequently used data to less expensive optical platters. When needed, the data is migrated back to hard disk storage. This balances the need for fast retrieval from hard disk with the lower cost of optical platters.
<b>Holidays file</b>	A file that contains information about holidays. You can set different holidays by editing the Holidays file on the Cell Manager in the directory <i>Data_Protector_program_data\Config\Server\holidays</i> (Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2012), <i>Data_Protector_home\Config\Server\holidays</i> (other Windows systems), or <i>/etc/opt/omni/server/Holidays</i> (UNIX systems).
<b>hosting system</b>	A working Data Protector client used for Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery with a Data Protector Disk Agent installed.
<b>HP Business Copy (BC) P6000 EVA</b>	<i>(HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term)</i> A local replication software solution that enables creation of point-in-time copies (replicas) of the source volumes using the snapshot and clone capabilities of the P6000 EVA firmware. See also replica, source volume, snapshot, and HP Continuous Access + Business Copy (CA+BC) P6000 EVA.
<b>HP Business Copy (BC) P9000 XP</b>	<i>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> An HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family configuration that enables creation and maintenance of internal copies of LDEVs for various purposes, such as data duplication and backup. The copies (secondary volumes or S-VOLs) can be separated from the primary volumes (P-VOLs) and connected to a different system. For Data Protector zero downtime backup purposes, P-VOLs should be available to the application system, and one of the S-VOL sets should be available to the backup system. See also LDEV, HP Continuous Access (CA) P9000 XP, Main Control Unit, application system, and backup system.
<b>HP Command View (CV) EVA</b>	<i>(HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term)</i> The user interface that enables you to configure, manage, and monitor your P6000 EVA storage system. It is used to perform various storage management tasks, for example, creating virtual disk families, managing storage system hardware, and creating snapshots, snapclones, and mirrorclones of virtual disks. The HP Command View EVA software runs on the HP Storage Management Appliance, and is accessed by a Web browser. See also HP P6000 EVA SMI-S Agent and HP SMI-S P6000 EVA Array provider.
<b>HP Continuous Access (CA) P9000 XP</b>	<i>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> An HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family configuration that enables creation and maintenance of remote copies of LDEVs for purposes such as data duplication, backup, and disaster recovery. HP CA P9000 XP operations involve main (primary) disk array units and remote (secondary) disk array units. The main disk array units are connected to the application system and contain primary volumes (P-VOLs), which store original data. The remote disk array units are connected to the backup system and contain secondary volumes (S-VOLs). See also HP Business Copy (BC) P9000 XP, Main Control Unit, and LDEV.
<b>HP Continuous Access + Business Copy (CA+BC) P6000 EVA</b>	<i>(HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term)</i> An HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family configuration that enables creation and maintenance of copies (replicas) of the source volumes on a remote P6000 EVA, and later use of these copies as the source for local replication on this remote array. See also HP Business Copy (BC) P6000 EVA, replica, and source volume.
<b>HP P6000 EVA SMI-S Agent</b>	A Data Protector software module that executes all tasks required for the HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family integration. With the P6000 EVA SMI-S Agent, the control over the array is established through HP SMI-S P6000 EVA Array provider, which directs communication between incoming requests and HP CV EVA. See also HP Command View (CV) EVA and HP SMI-S P6000 EVA Array provider.

<b>HP P9000 XP Agent</b>	A Data Protector component that executes all tasks needed by the Data Protector HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family integration. It uses RAID Manager Library for communication with a P9000 XP Array storage system. <i>See also</i> RAID Manager Library.
<b>HP SMI-S P6000 EVA Array provider</b>	An interface used for controlling HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family. SMI-S P6000 EVA Array provider runs as a separate service on the HP Storage Management Appliance system and acts as a gateway between incoming requests and HP Command View EVA. With the Data Protector HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family integration, SMI-S P6000 EVA Array provider accepts standardized requests from the P6000 EVA SMI-S Agent, communicates with HP Command View EVA for information or method invocation, and returns standardized responses. <i>See also</i> HP P6000 EVA SMI-S Agent and HP Command View (CV) EVA.
<b>HP Operations Manager</b>	HP Operations Manager provides powerful capabilities for operations management of a large number of systems and applications in a network. Data Protector provides an integration into this management product. This integration is implemented as a SMART Plug-In for HP Operations Manager management servers on Windows, HP-UX, Solaris, and Linux. Earlier versions of HP Operations Manager were called IT/Operations, Operations Center, Vantage Point Operations, and OpenView Operations.
<b>HP Operations Manager SMART Plug-In (SPI)</b>	A fully integrated, out-of-the-box solution which "plugs into" HP Operations Manager, extending the managed domain. Through the Data Protector integration, which is implemented as an HP Operations Manager SMART Plug-In, a user can have an arbitrary number of Data Protector Cell Managers monitored as an extension to HP Operations Manager.
<b>ICDA</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix specific term)</i> EMC's Symmetrix Integrated Cached Disk Arrays (ICDA) is a disk array device that combines a set of physical disks, a number of FWD SCSI channels, an internal cache memory, and control and diagnostic software commonly referred to as the microcode.
<b>IDB</b>	The Data Protector Internal Database. IDB is an embedded database located on the Cell Manager and keeps information regarding which data was backed up, to which media it was backed up, how backup, restore, and other sessions were run, which devices, libraries, and disk arrays are configured, and so on.
<b>IDB recovery file</b>	An IDB file (obrindex.dat) with information about IDB backups, media, and devices used for the backup. This information can significantly simplify IDB recovery. It is recommended to relocate the file, together with IDB transaction logs, to a separate physical disk from other IDB directories, and, additionally, to make an additional copy of the file.
<b>importing media</b>	A process that re-reads all data about backup sessions which are on the medium back into the IDB. This then allows for fast and convenient access to the data on the media. <i>See also</i> exporting media.
<b>incremental (re)-establish</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix specific term)</i> A BCV or SRDF control operation. In BCV control operations, an incremental establish causes the BCV device to be synchronized incrementally and to function as an EMC Symmetrix mirrored medium. The EMC Symmetrix devices must have been previously paired. In SRDF control operations, an incremental establish causes the target (R2) device to be synchronized incrementally and to function as an EMC Symmetrix mirrored medium. The EMC Symmetrix devices must have been previously paired.
<b>incremental backup</b>	A backup that selects only files that have changed since a previous backup. Several levels of incremental backup are available, which enables detailed control of restore chain length. <i>See also</i> backup types.
<b>incremental backup</b>	<i>(Microsoft Exchange Server specific term)</i> A backup of the Microsoft Exchange Server data that has changed since the last full or incremental backup. With the incremental backup, only the transaction log files are backed up. <i>See also</i> backup types.
<b>incremental mailbox backup</b>	An incremental mailbox backup backs up all the changes made to the mailbox after the last backup of any type.
<b>incremental restore</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix specific term)</i> A BCV or SRDF control operation. In BCV control operations, an incremental restore reassigns a BCV device as the next available mirror of the standard device in the pair. However, the standard devices are updated with only the data that was written to

the BCV device during the time of the original pair split, and the data that was written to the standard device during the split is overwritten with data from the BCV mirror. In SRDF control operations, an incremental restore reassigns a target (R2) device as the next available mirror of the source (R1) device in the pair. However, the source (R1) devices are updated with only the data that was written to the target (R2) device during the time of the original pair split, and the data that was written to the source (R1) device during the split is overwritten with data from the target (R2) mirror.

<b>incremental ZDB</b>	A filesystem ZDB-to-tape or ZDB-to-disk+tape session in which only changes from the last protected full or incremental backup are streamed to tape. See also full ZDB.
<b>incremental1 mailbox backup</b>	An incremental1 mailbox backup backs up all the changes made to the mailbox after the last full backup.
<b>Inet</b>	A process that runs on each UNIX system or service that runs on each Windows system in the Data Protector cell. It is responsible for communication between systems in the cell and for starting other processes needed for backup and restore. The Inet service is started as soon as Data Protector is installed on a system. The Inet process is started by the inetd daemon.
<b>Information Store</b>	( <i>Microsoft Exchange Server specific term</i> ) The Microsoft Exchange Server service that is responsible for storage management. Information Store in Microsoft Exchange Server manages two kinds of stores: mailbox stores and public folder stores. A mailbox store consists of mailboxes that belong to individual users. A public folder store contains public folders and messages that are shared among several users. See also Key Management Service and Site Replication Service.
<b>Informix Server initializing</b>	( <i>Informix Server specific term</i> ) Refers to Informix Dynamic Server. See formatting.
<b>Installation Server</b>	A computer system that holds a repository of the Data Protector installation packages for a specific architecture. The Installation Server is used for remote installation of Data Protector clients. In mixed environments at least two Installation Servers are needed: one for UNIX systems and one for Windows systems.
<b>instant recovery</b>	( <i>ZDB specific term</i> ) A process in which a replica, produced by a ZDB-to-disk or a ZDB-to-disk+tape session, is used to restore the contents of the source volumes to their states at the time at which the replica was created, avoiding the need to perform a restore from tape. Depending on the application or database concerned, this may be all that is required, or other steps, such as the application of transaction log files, may be required for full recovery. See also replica, zero downtime backup (ZDB), ZDB to disk, and ZDB to disk+tape.
<b>integration object</b>	A backup object of a Data Protector integration, such as Oracle or SAP DB.
<b>Internet Information Services (IIS)</b>	( <i>Windows specific term</i> ) Microsoft Internet Information Services is a network file and application server that supports multiple protocols. Primarily, IIS transmits information in Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) pages by using the Hypertext Transport Protocol (HTTP).
<b>ISQL</b>	( <i>Sybase specific term</i> ) A Sybase utility used to perform system administration tasks on Sybase SQL Server.

## J

<b>Java GUI Client</b>	The Java GUI Client is a component of the Java GUI that contains only user interface related functionalities (the Cell Manager graphical user interface and the Manager-of-Managers (MoM) graphical user interface) and requires connection to the Java GUI Server to function.
<b>Java GUI Server</b>	The Java GUI Server is a component of the Java GUI that is installed on the Data Protector Cell Manager system. The Java GUI Server receives requests from the Java GUI Client, processes them and then sends the responses back to the Java GUI Client. The communication is done through Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) on port 5556.
<b>jukebox</b>	See library.
<b>jukebox device</b>	A device consisting of multiple slots used to store either optical or file media. When being used to store file media, the jukebox device is known as the "file jukebox device".



## K

<b>Key Management Service</b>	<i>(Microsoft Exchange Server specific term)</i> The Microsoft Exchange Server service that provides encryption functionality for enhanced security. See also Information Store and Site Replication Service.
<b>keychain</b>	A tool that eliminates the supply of a passphrase manually when decrypting the private key. It needs to be installed and configured on the Installation Server if you perform remote installation using secure shell.
<b>keystore</b>	All encryption keys are centrally stored in the keystore on the Cell Manager and administered by the Key Management Server (KMS).
<b>KMS</b>	Key Management Server (KMS) is a centralized service that runs on the Cell Manager and provides key management for the Data Protector encryption functionality. The service is started as soon as Data Protector is installed on the Cell Manager.

## L

<b>LBO</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix specific term)</i> A Logical Backup Object (LBO) is an object of data storage/retrieval in the EMC Symmetrix environment. It is stored/retrieved by EMC Symmetrix as one entity and can only be restored as a whole.
<b>LDEV</b>	<i>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> A logical partition of a physical disk of a disk array of the HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family. An LDEV is the entity that can be replicated using the split-mirror or snapshot functionality of such disk array. See also HP Business Copy (BC) P9000 XP, HP Continuous Access (CA) P9000 XP, and replica.
<b>library</b>	Also called autochanger, jukebox, autoloader, or exchanger. A library contains media in repository slots. Each slot holds one medium (for example, DDS/DAT). Media are moved between slots and drives by a robotic mechanism, allowing random access to media. The library can contain multiple drives.
<b>lights-out operation or unattended operation</b>	A backup or restore operation that takes place outside of normal business hours without an operator. This implies that no operator personnel is present to work with the backup application or service mount requests, for example.
<b>LISTENER.ORA</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> An Oracle configuration file that describes one or more Transparent Network Substrate (TNS) listeners on a server.
<b>load balancing</b>	By default, Data Protector automatically balances the usage of devices selected for backup, so that they are used evenly. Load balancing optimizes the device usage by balancing the number of objects written to each device. Since load balancing is done automatically during backup time, you do not need to manage how the data is actually backed up. You just specify the devices to be used. If you do not want to use load balancing, you can select which device will be used for each object in the backup specification. Data Protector will access the devices in the specified order.
<b>local and remote recovery</b>	Remote recovery is performed if all Media Agent hosts specified in the SRD file are accessible. If any of them fails, the disaster recovery process fails over to the local mode. This means that the target system is searched for locally attached devices. If only one device is found, it is automatically used. Otherwise, Data Protector prompts you to select the device, which will be used for restore.
<b>local continuous replication</b>	<i>(Microsoft Exchange Server specific term)</i> Local continuous replication (LCR) is a single-server solution that creates and maintains an exact copy (LCR copy) of a storage group. An LCR copy is located on the same server as the original storage group. When an LCR copy is created, it is kept up to date through change propagation (log replay) technology. The replication feature in LCR guarantees that logs that have not been replicated are not deleted. The implication of this behavior is that running backups in a mode that deletes logs may not actually free space if replication is sufficiently far behind in its log copying.  An LCR copy is used for disaster recovery because you can switch to the LCR copy in a few seconds. If an LCR copy is used for backup and if it is located on a different disk than the original data, then the I/O load on a production database is minimal.

A replicated storage group is represented as a new instance of Exchange writer called Exchange Replication Service and can be backed up (using VSS) as a normal storage group.

See also cluster continuous replication and Exchange Replication Service.

**lock name**

You can configure the same physical device several times with different characteristics, by using different device names. The lock name is a user specified string that is used for locking all such device configurations to prevent collision if several such devices (device names) are used concurrently. Use an identical lock name for all device definitions which use the same physical device.

**log\_full shell script**

(*Informix Server UNIX specific term*) A script provided by ON-Bar that you can use to start backing up logical log files when Informix Server issues a logfull event alarm. The Informix Server `ALARMPROGRAM` configuration parameter defaults to the `INFORMIXDIR/etc/log_full.sh`, where `INFORMIXDIR` is the Informix Server home directory. If you do not want logical logs to be backed up continuously, set the `ALARMPROGRAM` configuration parameter to `INFORMIXDIR/etc/no_log.sh`.

**logging level**

The logging level determines the amount of details on files and directories written to the IDB during backup, object copying, or object consolidation. You can always restore your data, regardless of the logging level used during backup. Data Protector provides four logging levels: Log All, Log Directories, Log Files, and No Log. The different logging level settings influence the IDB growth, backup speed, and the convenience of browsing data for restore.

**logical-log files**

This applies to online database backup. Logical-log files are files in which modified data is first stored before being flushed to disk. In the event of a failure, these logical-log files are used to roll forward all transactions that have been committed as well as roll back any transactions that have not been committed.

**login ID**

(*Microsoft SQL Server specific term*) The name a user uses to log on to Microsoft SQL Server. A login ID is valid if Microsoft SQL Server has an entry for that user in the system table `syslogin`.

**login information to the Oracle Target Database**

(*Oracle and SAP R/3 specific term*) The format of the login information is `user_name/password@service`, where:

- `user_name` is the name by which a user is known to Oracle Server and to other users. Every user name is associated with a password and both have to be entered to connect to an Oracle Target Database. This user must have Oracle `SYSDBA` or `SYSOPER` rights.
- `password` must be the same as the password specified in the Oracle password file (`orapwd`), which is used for authentication of users performing database administration.
- `service` is the name used to identify an SQL\*Net server process for the target database.

**login information to the Recovery Catalog Database**

(*Oracle specific term*) The format of the login information to the Recovery (Oracle) Catalog Database is `user_name/password@service`, where the description of the user name, password, and service name is the same as in the Oracle SQL\*Net V2 login information to the Oracle target database. In this case, `service` is the name of the service to the Recovery Catalog Database, not the Oracle target database.

Note that the Oracle user specified here must be the owner of the Oracle Recovery Catalog.

**Lotus C API**

(*Lotus Domino Server specific term*) An interface for the exchange of backup and recovery information between Lotus Domino Server and a backup solution, like Data Protector.

**LVM**

A Logical Volume Manager is a subsystem for structuring and mapping physical disk space to logical volumes on UNIX systems. An LVM system consists of several volume groups, where each volume group has several volumes.

**M**

**Magic Packet**

See Wake ONLAN.

**mailbox**

(*Microsoft Exchange Server specific term*) The location to which e-mail is delivered, which is set up by the administrator for each user. If a set of personal folders is designated as the e-mail delivery location, e-mail is routed from the mailbox to this location.

**mailbox store**

(*Microsoft Exchange Server specific term*) A part of the Information Store that maintains information in user mailboxes. A mailbox store consists of a binary rich-text `.edb` file and a streaming native internet content `.stm` file.



<b>Main Control Unit (MCU)</b>	<i>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> An HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family unit that contains primary volumes (P-VOLs) for the HP CA P9000 XP or HP CA+BC P9000 XP configuration and acts as a master device. See also HP Business Copy (BC) P9000 XP, HP Continuous Access (CA) P9000 XP, and LDEV.
<b>make_net_recovery</b>	<code>make_net_recovery</code> is an Ignite-UX command, which allows you to create a recovery archive over the network onto the Ignite-UX server or any other specified system. The target system can be recovered across subnets after booting either from a bootable tape created by the Ignite-UX <code>make_boot_tape</code> command or the system boots directly from the Ignite-UX server. Booting directly from the Ignite-UX server can be automated with the Ignite-UX <code>bootsys</code> command or interactively specified on the boot console.
<b>make_tape_recovery</b>	<code>make_tape_recovery</code> is a command on Ignite-UX which creates a bootable recovery (installation) tape, customized for your system and enables you unattended disaster recovery by connecting the backup device directly to the target system and booting the target system from the bootable recovery tape. The backup device has to be locally connected to the client during the creation of the archive and recovery of the client.
<b>Manager-of-Managers (MoM)</b>	See MoM.
<b>MAPI</b>	<i>(Microsoft Exchange Server specific term)</i> The MAPI (Messaging Application Programming Interface) is the programming interface that lets applications and messaging clients interact with messaging and information systems.
<b>MCU</b>	See Main Control Unit (MCU).
<b>Media Agent</b>	A process that controls reading from and writing to a device, which reads from or writes to a medium (typically a tape). During a backup session, a Media Agent receives data from the Disk Agent and sends it to the device for writing it to the medium. During a restore or object verification session, a Media Agent locates data on the backup medium and sends it to the Disk Agent for processing. For a restore session, the Disk Agent then writes the data to the disk. A Media Agent also manages the robotics control of a library.
<b>media allocation policy</b>	Determines in which sequence media are used for backup. The Strict allocation policy directs Data Protector to prompt for a specific medium. The Loose policy directs Data Protector to prompt for any suitable medium. The Formatted First policy directs Data Protector to give preference to unknown media, even if unprotected media are available in the library.
<b>media condition</b>	The quality of a medium as derived from the media condition factors. Heavy usage and age result in an increased number of read and write errors with tape media. Media need to be replaced when they are marked as POOR.
<b>media condition factors</b>	The user-assigned age threshold and overwrite threshold used to determine the state of a medium.
<b>media label</b>	A user-defined identifier used to describe a medium.
<b>media location</b>	A user-defined physical location of a medium, such as "building 4" or "off-site storage".
<b>media management session</b>	A session performing some action on a medium, such as initializing, scanning the content, verifying data on a medium, or copying a medium.
<b>media pool</b>	A set of media of the same type (such as DDS) used and tracked as a group. Media are formatted and assigned to a media pool.
<b>media set</b>	The result of a backup session is data backed up on a group of media called media set. Depending on the media usage policy, several sessions can share the same media.
<b>media type</b>	The physical type of media, such as DDS or DLT.
<b>media usage policy</b>	The media usage policy controls how new backups are added to the already used media. It can be Appendable, Non-Appendable, or Appendable for incrementals only.
<b>medium ID</b>	A unique identifier assigned to a medium by Data Protector.
<b>merging</b>	This defines one mode to resolve file conflicts during restore. If the file to be restored already exists at the destination, the one with the more recent modification date is kept. Files not present on the disk are always restored. See also overwrite.

<b>Microsoft Exchange Server</b>	A "client-server" messaging and a workgroup system that offers a transparent connection to many different communication systems. It provides users with an electronic mail system, individual and group scheduling, online forms, and workflow automation tools. It provides a developer with a platform on which to build custom information-sharing and messaging-service applications.
<b>Microsoft Management Console (MMC)</b>	( <i>Windows specific term</i> ) An administration model for Windows-based environments. It provides a simple, consistent, and integrated administration user interface allowing management of many applications through the same GUI, provided that the applications adhere to the MMC model.
<b>Microsoft SQL Server</b>	A database management system designed to meet the requirements of distributed "client-server" computing.
<b>Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS)</b>	A software service that provides a unified communication interface to coordinate backup and restore of a VSS-aware application regardless of its specific features. This service collaborates with the backup application, writers, shadow copy providers, and the operating system kernel to implement the management of volume shadow copies and shadow copy sets. See also shadow copy, shadow copy provider, replica, and writer.
<b>mirror (EMC Symmetrix and HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</b>	See target volume.
<b>mirror rotation (HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</b>	See replica set rotation.
<b>mirror unit (MU) number</b>	( <i>HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term</i> ) A non-negative integer number that determines a secondary volume (S-VOL) of an internal disk (LDEV) located on a disk array of the HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family. See also first-level mirror.
<b>mirrorclone</b>	( <i>HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term</i> ) A dynamic replica of a storage volume, which is kept updated with changes made to the original storage volume via a local replication link. Replication between the original storage volume and its mirrorclone can be suspended. For each storage volume, a single mirrorclone can be created on the disk array.
<b>MMD</b>	The Media Management Daemon process (service) runs on the Data Protector Cell Manager and controls media management and device operations. The process is started when Data Protector is installed on the Cell Manager.
<b>MMDB</b>	The Media Management Database (MMDB) is a part of the IDB that contains information about media, media pools, devices, libraries, library drives, and slots configured in the cell, as well as the Data Protector media used for backup. In an enterprise backup environment, this part of the database can be common to all cells. See also CMMDB and CDB.
<b>MoM</b>	Several cells can be grouped together and managed from a central cell. The management system of the central cell is the Manager-of-Managers (MoM). The cells are called MoM clients. The MoM enables you to configure and manage multiple cells from a central point.
<b>mount point</b>	The access point in a directory structure for a disk or logical volume, for example /opt or d: . On UNIX, the mount points are displayed using the bdf or df command.
<b>mount request</b>	A screen prompt that tells you to insert a specific medium into a device. Once you respond to the mount request by providing the required medium and confirm the mount request, the session continues.
<b>MSM</b>	The Data Protector Media Session Manager, which runs on the Cell Manager and controls media sessions, such as copying media.
<b>multisnapping</b>	( <i>HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term</i> ) Simultaneous creation of target volumes so that the backup data is consistent not only on each individual target volume, but also across all the volumes that constitute a snapshot. See also snapshot.



<b>OBDR capable device</b>	A device that can emulate a CD-ROM drive loaded with a bootable disk and can thus be used as a backup or boot device for disaster recovery purposes.
<b>obdrindex.dat</b>	See IDB recovery file.
<b>object</b>	See backup object.
<b>object consolidation</b>	The process of merging a restore chain of a backup object, consisting of a full backup and at least one incremental backup, into a new, consolidated version of this object. The process is a part of the synthetic backup procedure. The result is a synthetic full backup of the specified backup object.
<b>object consolidation session</b>	A process that merges a restore chain of a backup object, consisting of a full backup and at least one incremental backup, into a new, consolidated version of this object.
<b>object copy</b>	A copy of a specific object version that is created during an object copy session or a backup session with object mirroring.
<b>object copy session</b>	A process that creates an additional copy of the backed up data on a different media set. During an object copy session, the selected backed up objects are copied from the source to the target media.
<b>object copying</b>	The process of copying selected object versions to a specific media set. You can select object versions from one or several backup sessions to be copied.
<b>object ID</b>	( <i>Windows specific term</i> ) The object IDs (OIDs) enable access to NTFS 5 files no matter where in the system the files reside. Data Protector treats the OIDs as alternate streams of the files.
<b>object mirror</b>	A copy of a backup object created using object mirroring. Object mirrors are often referred to as object copies.
<b>object mirroring</b>	The process of writing the same data to several media sets during a backup session. Data Protector enables you to mirror all or some backup objects to one or more media sets.
<b>object verification</b>	The process of verifying the data integrity of backup objects, from the Data Protector point of view, and the ability of Data Protector to deliver them to the required destination. The process can be used to provide a level of confidence in the ability to restore object versions created by backup, object copy, or object consolidation sessions.
<b>object verification session</b>	A process that verifies the data integrity of specified backup objects or object versions and the ability of selected Data Protector network components to deliver them to a specified host. Object verification sessions can be run interactively, or as specified in automated post-backup, or scheduled specifications.
<b>offline backup</b>	<p>A backup during which an application database cannot be used by the application. In an offline backup session, the database is generally put into a quiescent state that allows use by the backup system, but not the application, for the time period of the data replication process. For instance, for backup to tape, until streaming of data to the tape is finished. Normal database operation is resumed before potential post-backup operations are started.</p> <p>See also zero downtime backup (ZDB) and online backup.</p>
<b>offline recovery</b>	Offline recovery is performed if the Cell Manager is not accessible, for example, due to network problems. Only standalone and SCSI library devices can be used for offline recovery. Recovery of the Cell Manager is always offline.
<b>offline redo log</b>	See archived redo log.
<b>ON-Bar</b>	<p>(<i>Informix Server specific term</i>) A backup and restore system for Informix Server. ON-Bar enables you to create a copy of your Informix Server data and later restore the data. The ON-Bar backup and restore system involves the following components:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• the <code>onbar</code> command</li><li>• Data Protector as the backup solution</li><li>• the XBSA interface</li><li>• ON-Bar catalog tables, which are used to back up dbobjects and track instances of dbobjects through multiple backups.</li></ul>

<b>ONCONFIG</b>	<i>(Informix Server specific term)</i> An environment variable that specifies the name of the active ONCONFIG configuration file. If the ONCONFIG environment variable is not present, Informix Server uses the configuration values from the <code>onconfig</code> file in the directory <code>INFORMIXDIR/etc</code> (on Windows) or <code>INFORMIXDIR/etc/</code> (on UNIX).
<b>online backup</b>	<p>A backup performed while a database application remains available for use. The database is placed into a special backup mode of operation for the time period of the data replication process. For instance, for backup to tape, until streaming of data to tape is finished. During this period, the database is fully operational, but there may be a small performance impact and log files may grow very quickly. Normal database operation is resumed before potential post-backup operations are started.</p> <p>In some cases, transaction logs may also have to be backed up to allow a consistent database to be restored.</p> <p>See also zero downtime backup (ZDB) and offline backup.</p>
<b>online recovery</b>	Online recovery is performed when Cell Manager is accessible. In this case, most of the Data Protector functionalities are available (Cell Manager runs the session, restore sessions are logged in the IDB, you can monitor the restore progress using the GUI, and so on).
<b>online redo log</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> Redo logs that have not been archived, but are either available to the instance for recording database activity or are filled and waiting to be archived or reused. See also archived redo log.
<b>Oracle Data Guard</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> Oracle Data Guard is Oracle's primary disaster recovery solution. Oracle Data Guard is able to maintain up to nine standby databases, each of which is a real-time copy of the production (primary) database, to protect against corruptions, data failures, human errors, and disasters. If a failure occurs on the production (primary) database, then a failover to one of the standby databases which becomes the new primary database is possible. In addition, planned downtime for maintenance can be reduced because the production processing can be moved from the current primary database to a standby database and back quickly.
<b>Oracle instance</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> Each installation of an Oracle database on one or more systems. One computer system can have several instances of a database running.
<b>ORACLE_SID</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> A unique name for an Oracle Server instance. To switch among Oracle Servers, specify the desired <code>ORACLE_SID</code> . The <code>ORACLE_SID</code> is included in the <code>CONNECT DATA</code> parts of the connect descriptor in a <code>TNSNAMES.ORA</code> file and in the definition of the TNS listener in the <code>LISTENER.ORA</code> file.
<b>original system</b>	The system configuration backed up by Data Protector before a computer disaster hits the system.
<b>overwrite</b>	<p>An option that defines one mode to resolve file conflicts during restore. All files are restored from a backup even if they are older than existing files.</p> <p>See also merging.</p>
<b>ownership</b>	<p>Backup ownership affects the ability of users to see and restore data. Each backup session and all the data backed up within it is assigned an owner. The owner can be the user that starts an interactive backup, the account under which the CRS process is running, or the user specified as the owner in the backup specification options.</p> <p>If a user starts an existing backup specification without modifying it, the backup session is not considered as interactive.</p> <p>If a modified backup specification is started by a user, the user is the owner unless the following is true:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The user has the Switch Session Ownership user right.</li> <li>• The backup session owner is explicitly defined in the backup specification, where the username, group or domain name, and the system name are specified.</li> </ul> <p>If a backup is scheduled on a UNIX Cell Manager, the session owner is <code>root:sys</code> unless the above conditions are true.</p> <p>If a backup is scheduled on a Windows Cell Manager, the session owner is the user specified during the installation, unless the above conditions are true.</p> <p>When copying or consolidating objects, by default the owner is the user who starts the operation, unless a different owner is specified in the copy or consolidation specification.</p>

<b>P1S file</b>	<p>P1S file contains information on how to format and partition all disks installed in the system during Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery (EADR). It is created during full backup and is saved on backup medium and on Cell Manager into the directory  <i>Data_Protector_program_data\Config\Server\dr\pls</i> (Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2012),  <i>Data_Protector_home\Config\Server\dr\pls</i> (other Windows systems), or  <i>/etc/opt/omni/server/dr/pls</i> (UNIX systems) with the filename <i>recovery.pls</i>.</p>
<b>package</b>	<p>(MC/ServiceGuard and Veritas Cluster specific term) A collection of resources (for example volume groups, application services, IP names, and addresses) that are needed to run a specific cluster-aware application.</p>
<b>pair status</b>	<p>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term) The status of a disk pair (secondary volume and its corresponding primary volume) of a disk array of the HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family. Depending on the circumstances, the paired disks can be in various states. The following states are particularly important for the operation of the Data Protector HP P9000 XP Agent:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PAIR</b> – The secondary volume is prepared for zero downtime backup. If it is a mirror, it is completely synchronized, and if it is a volume to be used for snapshot storage, it is empty.</li> <li>• <b>SUSPENDED</b> – The link between the disks is suspended. However, the pair relationship is still maintained, and the secondary disk can be prepared for zero downtime backup again at a later time.</li> <li>• <b>COPY</b> – The disk pair is currently busy and making a transition into the PAIR state. If the secondary volume is a mirror, it is re-synchronizing with the primary volume, and if it is a volume to be used for snapshot storage, its contents are getting cleared.</li> </ul>
<b>parallel restore</b>	<p>Restoring backed up data to multiple disks at the same time (that is, in parallel) by running multiple Disk Agents that receive data from one Media Agent. For the parallel restore to work, select data that is located on different disks or logical volumes and during backup, the data from the different objects must have been sent to the same device using a concurrency of 2 or more. During a parallel restore, the data for multiple objects selected for restore is read from media at the same time, thereby improving performance.</p>
<b>parallelism</b>	<p>The concept of reading multiple data streams from an online database.</p>
<b>phase 0 of disaster recovery</b>	<p>Preparation for disaster recovery - the prerequisite condition for a successful disaster recovery.</p>
<b>phase 1 of disaster recovery</b>	<p>Installation and configuration of DR OS, establishing previous storage structure.</p>
<b>phase 2 of disaster recovery</b>	<p>Restoration of operating system (with all the configuration information that defines the environment) and Data Protector.</p>
<b>phase 3 of disaster recovery</b>	<p>Restoration of user and application data.</p>
<b>physical device</b>	<p>A physical unit that contains either a drive or a more complex unit such as a library.</p>
<b>post-exec</b>	<p>A backup option that executes a command or script after the backup of an object or after the entire session completes. Post-exec commands are not supplied by Data Protector. You need to create your own. They can be written as executables or batch files on Windows and as shell scripts on UNIX.  <i>See also pre-exec.</i></p>
<b>pre- and post-exec commands</b>	<p>Pre- and post-exec commands are used to perform additional action before and after a backup or restore session. They are not supplied by Data Protector. You need to create your own commands. They can be written as executables or batch files on Windows and as shell scripts on UNIX.</p>
<b>pre-exec</b>	<p>A backup option that executes a command or script before the backup of an object or before the entire session is started. Pre-exec commands are not supplied by Data Protector. You need to create your own. They can be written as executables or batch files on Windows and as shell scripts on UNIX.  <i>See also post-exec.</i></p>

<b>prealloc list</b>	A subset of media in a media pool that specifies the order in which media are used for backup.
<b>primary volume (P-VOL)</b>	<i>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> An internal disk (LDEV) of a disk array of the HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family for which a secondary volume (S-VOL), either its mirror or a volume to be used for its snapshot storage, exists. In the HP CA P9000 XP and HP CA+BC P9000 XP configurations, primary volumes are located in the Main Control Unit (MCU). See also secondary volume (S-VOL) and Main Control Unit (MCU).
<b>protection</b>	See data protection and also catalog protection.
<b>public folder store</b>	<i>(Microsoft Exchange Server specific term)</i> The part of the Information Store that maintains information in public folders. A public folder store consists of a binary rich-text .edb file and a streaming native internet content .stm file.
<b>public/private backed up data</b>	When configuring a backup, you can select whether the backed up data will be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• public, that is visible (and accessible for restore) to all Data Protector users</li> <li>• private, that is, visible (and accessible for restore) only to the owner of the backup and administrators</li> </ul>
<b>R</b>	
<b>RAID</b>	Redundant Array of Independent Disks.
<b>RAID Manager Library</b>	<i>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> A software library that is used for accessing the configuration, status, and performance measurement data of a P9000 XP Array storage system, and for invoking operations on the disk array. It translates function calls into sequences of low-level SCSI commands. See also HP P9000 XP Agent.
<b>RAID Manager P9000 XP</b>	<i>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> A software application that provides a command-line interface to disk arrays of the HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family. It offers an extensive set of commands for reporting and controlling the status of a P9000 XP Array storage system, and for performing various operations on the disk array.
<b>rawdisk backup</b>	See disk image backup.
<b>RCU</b>	See Remote Control Unit (RCU).
<b>RDBMS</b>	Relational Database Management System.
<b>RDF1/RDF2</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix specific term)</i> A type of SRDF device group. Only RDF devices can be assigned to an RDF group. An RDF1 group type contains source (R1) devices and an RDF2 group type contains target (R2) devices.
<b>RDS</b>	The Raima Database Server process (service) runs on the Data Protector Cell Manager and manages the IDB. The process is started when Data Protector is installed on the Cell Manager.
<b>Recovery Catalog</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> A set of Oracle tables and views that are used by Recovery Manager to store information about Oracle databases. This information is used by Recovery Manager to manage the backup, restore, and recovery of Oracle databases. The recovery catalog contains information about: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The physical schema of the Oracle target database</li> <li>• Data file and archived log backup sets</li> <li>• Data file copies</li> <li>• Archived Redo Logs</li> <li>• Stored scripts</li> </ul>
<b>Recovery Catalog Database</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> An Oracle database that contains a recovery catalog schema. You should not store the recovery catalog in your target database.
<b>recovery files</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> Recovery files are Oracle specific files that reside in the flash recovery area: the current control file, online redo logs, archived redo logs, flashback logs, control file autobackups, datafile copies, and backup pieces. See also flash recovery area.

<b>Recovery Manager (RMAN)</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> An Oracle command-line interface that directs an Oracle Server process to back up, restore, or recover the database it is connected to. RMAN uses either the recovery catalog or the control file to store information about backups. This information can be used later in restore sessions.
<b>RecoveryInfo</b>	When backing up Windows configuration files, Data Protector collects the information about the current system configuration (information on disk layout, volume, and network configuration). This information is needed for disaster recovery.
<b>recycle or unprotect</b>	A process that removes the data protection from all backed up data on a medium, allowing Data Protector to overwrite it during one of the next backups. Data that belongs to the same session(s) but resides on other media is also unprotected. Recycling does not actually alter the data on the medium.
<b>redo log</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> Every Oracle database has a set of two or more redo log files. The set of redo log files for the database is known as the database's redo log. Oracle uses the redo log to record all changes made to data.
<b>Remote Control Unit (RCU)</b>	<i>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> An HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family unit that acts as a slave device to the Main Control Unit (MCU) in the HP CA P9000 XP or HP CA+BC P9000 XP configuration. In bidirectional configurations, the RCU can also act as an MCU.
<b>Removable Storage Management Database</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> A Windows service used for managing removable media (such as tapes and disks) and storage devices (libraries). Removable Storage allows applications to access and share the same media resources.
<b>reparse point</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> A system-controlled attribute that can be associated with any directory or file. The value of a reparse attribute can have user-controlled data. The format of the data is understood by the application that stored the data and a filesystem filter that was installed to interpret the data and process such files. Whenever the filesystem encounters a file with a reparse point, it attempts to find the filesystem filter associated with the data format.
<b>replica</b>	<i>(ZDB specific term)</i> An image, at a particular point in time, of the data in source volumes that contain user-specified backup objects. Depending on the hardware or software with which it is created, the image may be an independent exact duplicate (clone) of the storage blocks at the physical disk level (for example, a split mirror or snapclone), or a virtual copy (for example, a snapshot). From perspective of a basic operating system, the complete physical disk containing backup objects is replicated. However, if a volume manager is used on UNIX, the whole volume or disk group containing a backup object (logical volume) is replicated. If partitions are used on Windows, the whole physical volume containing the selected partition is replicated. See also snapshot, snapshot creation, split mirror, and split mirror creation.
<b>replica set</b>	<i>(ZDB specific term)</i> A group of replicas, all created using the same backup specification. See also replica and replica set rotation.
<b>replica set rotation</b>	<i>(ZDB specific term)</i> The use of a replica set for regular backup production: Each time the same backup specification requiring the use of a replica set is run, a new replica is created and added to the set, until the maximum number for the set is reached. After that, the oldest replica in the set is replaced, maintaining the maximum number of replicas in the set. See also replica and replica set.
<b>restore chain</b>	Backup images that are needed to restore a backed up object to the state it was in at the selected point in time. In general, a restore chain of an object consists of its full backup image and one or more related incremental backup images.
<b>restore session</b>	A process that copies data from backup media to a client.
<b>resync mode</b>	<i>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family VSS provider specific term)</i> One of two P9000 XP Array VSS hardware provider operation modes. When the P9000 XP Array provider is in the resync mode, the source volume (P-VOL) and its replica (S-VOL) are in the suspended mirror relationship after a backup. The maximum number of replicas (S-VOLs per a P-VOL) rotated is three provided that MU range is 0-2 or 0, 1, 2. Restore from a backup in such a configuration is possible only by re-synchronization of an S-VOL with its P-VOL. See also VSS compliant mode, source volume, primary volume (P-VOL), replica, secondary volume (S-VOL), mirror unit (MU) number, and replica set rotation.

<b>RMAN (Oracle specific term)</b>	See Recovery Manager.
<b>RSM</b>	The Data Protector Restore Session Manager controls restore and object verification sessions. This process always runs on the Cell Manager system.
<b>RSM</b>	( <i>Windows specific term</i> ) Removable Storage Manager (RSM) includes a media management service that facilitates communication among applications, robotic changers, and media libraries. It enables multiple applications to share local robotic media libraries and tape or disk drives and to manage removable media.
<b>S</b>	
<b>SAPDBA</b>	( <i>SAP R/3 specific term</i> ) An SAP R/3 user interface that integrates the BRBACKUP, BRARCHIVE, and BRRESTORE tools.
<b>scanning</b>	A function which identifies the media in a device. This synchronizes the MMDB with the media that are actually present at the selected locations (for example, slots in a library). It is useful to perform a scan and check the actual media in the device if someone has manually manipulated media without using Data Protector to eject or enter, for example.
<b>Scheduler</b>	A function that controls when and how often automatic backups occur. By setting up a schedule, you automate the start of backups.
<b>secondary volume (S-VOL)</b>	( <i>HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term</i> ) An internal disk (LDEV) of a disk array of the HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family which is paired with another LDEV: a primary volume (P-VOL). It can act as a mirror of the P-VOL or as a volume to be used for the P-VOL's snapshot storage. An S-VOL is assigned a SCSI address different from the one used for the P-VOL. In an HP CA P9000 XP configuration, the S-VOLs acting as mirrors can be used as failover devices in a MetroCluster configuration. See also primary volume (P-VOL) and Main Control Unit (MCU).
<b>session</b>	See backup session, media management session, and restore session.
<b>session ID</b>	An identifier of a backup, restore, object copy, object consolidation, object verification, or media management session, consisting of the date when the session ran and a unique number.
<b>session key</b>	This environment variable for the pre-exec and post-exec script is a Data Protector unique identification of any session, including preview sessions. The session key is not recorded in the database, and it is used for specifying options for the omnimnt, omnistat, and omniabort commands.
<b>shadow copy</b>	( <i>Microsoft VSS specific term</i> ) A volume that represents a duplicate of the original volume at a certain point in time. The data is then backed up from the shadow copy and not from the original volume. The original volume continues to change as the backup process continues, but the shadow copy of the volume remains constant. See also Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service and replica.
<b>shadow copy provider</b>	( <i>Microsoft VSS specific term</i> ) An entity that performs the work on creating and representing the volume shadow copies. Providers own the shadow copy data and expose the shadow copies. Providers can be software (for example, system providers) or hardware (local disks, disk arrays). See also shadow copy.
<b>shadow copy set</b>	( <i>Microsoft VSS specific term</i> ) A collection of shadow copies created at the same point in time. See also shadow copy and replica set.
<b>shared disks</b>	A Windows disk on another system that has been made available to other users on the network. Systems with shared disks can be backed up without a Data Protector Disk Agent installed.
<b>SIBF</b>	The Serverless Integrations Binary Files (SIBF) is a part of the IDB that stores raw NDMP metadata. This data is necessary to perform restore of NDMP objects.
<b>Site Replication Service</b>	( <i>Microsoft Exchange Server specific term</i> ) The Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 service that permits compatibility with Microsoft Exchange Server 5.5 by emulating the Exchange Server 5.5 directory service. See also Information Store and Key Management Service.
<b>slot</b>	A mechanical position in a library. Each slot can hold a medium, such as a DLT tape. Data Protector references each slot with a number. To read a medium, a robotic mechanism moves the medium from a slot into the drive.



<b>smart copy</b>	<i>(VLS specific term)</i> A copy of the backed up data created from the virtual tape to the physical tape library. The smart copy process allows Data Protector to distinguish between the source and the target medium thus enabling media management. See also Virtual Library System (VLS).
<b>smart copy pool</b>	<i>(VLS specific term)</i> A pool that defines which destination library slots are available as smart copy targets for a specified source virtual library. See also Virtual Library System (VLS) and smart copy.
<b>SMB</b>	See split mirror backup.
<b>SMBF</b>	The Session Messages Binary Files (SMBF) part of the LDB stores session messages generated during backup, restore, object copy, object consolidation, object verification, and media management sessions. One binary file is created per session. The files are grouped by year and month.
<b>SMI-S Agent (SMISA)</b>	See HP P6000 EVA SMI-S Agent.
<b>snapshot</b>	<i>(HP P4000 SAN Solutions, HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family, HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family, and HP P10000 Storage Systems specific term)</i> A type of target volumes created using a specific replication technology. Depending on the disk array model and the chosen replication technique, a range of snapshot types with different characteristics is available. Basically, each snapshot may be either a virtual copy, still reliant upon the contents of the source volume, or an independent duplicate (clone) of the source volume. See also replica and snapshot creation.
<b>snapshot backup</b>	See ZDB to tape, ZDB to disk, and ZDB to disk+tape.
<b>snapshot creation</b>	<i>(HP P4000 SAN Solutions, HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family, HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family, and HP P10000 Storage Systems specific term)</i> A replica creation process in which copies of the selected source volumes are created using storage virtualization technology. Such a replica is considered to be created at a particular point in time, and is immediately available for use. However, with certain snapshot types, a background data copying process continues to run on the disk array after the moment of the replica creation. See also snapshot.
<b>source (R1) device</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix specific term)</i> An EMC Symmetrix device that participates in SRDF operations with a target (R2) device. All writes to this device are mirrored to a target (R2) device in a remote EMC Symmetrix unit. An R1 device must be assigned to an RDF1 group type. See also target (R2) device.
<b>source volume</b>	<i>(ZDB specific term)</i> A storage volume containing data to be replicated.
<b>sparse file</b>	A file that contains data with portions of empty blocks. Examples are: a matrix in which some or much of the data contains zeros, files from image applications, and high-speed databases. If sparse file processing is not enabled during restore, it might be impossible to restore this file.
<b>split mirror</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix Disk Array and HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> A type of target volumes created using a specific replication technology. A split-mirror replica provides independent duplicates (clones) of the source volumes. See also replica and split mirror creation.
<b>split mirror backup (EMC Symmetrix specific term)</b>	See ZDB to tape.
<b>split mirror backup (HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</b>	See ZDB to tape, ZDB to disk, and ZDB to disk+tape.
<b>split mirror creation</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix and HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> A replica creation technique, in which a pre-configured set of target volumes (a mirror) is kept synchronized with a set of source volumes until the time at which a replica of the contents of the source volumes is required. Then, the synchronization is stopped (the mirror is split) and a split mirror replica of the source volumes at the time of the split remains in the target volumes. See also split mirror.

<b>split mirror restore</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix and HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family specific term)</i> A process in which data backed up in a ZDB-to-tape or a ZDB-to-disk+tape session is first copied from the backup media to a replica, and from the replica to the source volumes afterwards. Individual backup objects or complete sessions can be restored using this method. See also ZDB to tape, ZDB to disk+tape, and replica.
<b>sqlhosts file or registry</b>	<i>(Informix Server specific term)</i> An Informix Server connectivity information file (on UNIX) or registry (on Windows) that contains the names of each of the database servers and any aliases to which the clients on a host computer can connect.
<b>SRD file</b>	<i>(disaster recovery specific term)</i> A text file in the Unicode (UTF-16) format, generated during CONFIGURATION backup of a Windows or Linux system and stored on the Cell Manager. It contains system information required for installing and configuring the operating system on the target system in the case of a disaster. See also target system.
<b>SRDF</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix specific term)</i> The EMC Symmetrix Remote Data Facility is a business continuation process that enables effective, real-time data replication of SLDs between dislocated processing environments. These environments could be situated within the same root computer environment or separated by long distances.
<b>SSE Agent (SSEA)</b>	See HP P9000 XP Agent.
<b>sst.conf file</b>	The file <code>/usr/kernel/drv/sst.conf</code> is required on each Data Protector Solaris client to which a multi-drive library device is connected. It must contain an entry for the SCSI address of the robotic mechanism of each library device connected to the client.
<b>st.conf file</b>	The file <code>/kernel/drv/st.conf</code> is required on each Data Protector Solaris client with a backup device connected. It must contain device information and a SCSI address for each backup drive connected to that client. A single SCSI entry is required for a single-drive device and multiple SCSI entries are required for a multi-drive library device.
<b>stackers</b>	Devices with multiple slots for media storage usually with only one drive. A stacker selects media from the stack sequentially. In contrast, a library can randomly select media from its repository.
<b>standalone file device</b>	A file device is a file in a specified directory to which you back up data.
<b>Storage Group</b>	<i>(Microsoft Exchange Server specific term)</i> A collection of mailbox stores and public folder stores that share a set of transaction log files. Exchange Server manages each storage group with a separate server process.
<b>storage volume</b>	<i>(ZDB specific term)</i> An object that may be presented to an operating system or some other entity (for example, a virtualization mechanism) upon which volume management systems, filesystems, or other objects may exist. The volume management systems, file systems are built on this storage. Typically, these can be created or exist within a storage system such as a disk array.
<b>StorageTek ACS library</b>	<i>(StorageTek specific term)</i> Automated Cartridge System is a library system (also known as Silo) consisting of one Library Management Unit (LMU) and one to 24 Library Storage Modules (LSM) connected to the unit.
<b>switchover</b>	See failover.
<b>Sybase Backup Server API</b>	<i>(Sybase specific term)</i> An industry-standard interface developed for the exchange of backup and recovery information between a Sybase SQL Server and a backup solution like Data Protector.
<b>Sybase SQL Server</b>	<i>(Sybase specific term)</i> The server in the Sybase "client-server" architecture. Sybase SQL Server manages multiple databases and multiple users, keeps track of the actual location of data on disks, maintains mapping of logical data description to physical data storage, and maintains data and procedure caches in memory.
<b>SYMA</b>	See EMC Symmetrix Agent.
<b>synthetic backup</b>	A backup solution that produces a synthetic full backup, an equivalent to a conventional full backup in terms of data, without putting stress on the production servers or the network. A synthetic full backup is created from a previous full backup and any number of incremental backups.
<b>synthetic full backup</b>	The result of an object consolidation operation, where a restore chain of a backup objects is merged into a new, synthetic full version of this object. A synthetic full backup is equivalent to a conventional full backup in terms of restore speed.

<b>System Backup to Tape</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> An Oracle interface that handles the actions required to load, label, and unload correct backup devices when Oracle issues a backup or restore request.
<b>system databases</b>	<p><i>(Sybase specific term)</i> The four system databases on a newly installed Sybase SQL Server are the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• master database (master)</li> <li>• temporary database (tempdb)</li> <li>• system procedure database (sybsystemprocs)</li> <li>• model database (model).</li> </ul>
<b>System Recovery Data file</b>	See SRD file.
<b>System State</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> The System State data comprises the Registry, COM+ Class Registration database, system startup files, and the Certificate Services database (if the server is a certificate server). If the server is a domain controller, Active Directory services and the SYSVOL directory are also contained in the System State data. If the server is running the Cluster service, the System State data also includes resource registry checkpoints and the quorum resource recovery log, which contains the most recent cluster database information.
<b>system volume/disk/partition</b>	A volume/disk/partition containing operating system files. Microsoft terminology defines the system volume/disk/partition as the volume/disk/partition containing files required for the initial step of the boot process.
<b>SysVol</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> A shared directory that stores the server copy of the domain's public files, which are replicated among all domain controllers in the domain.
<b>T</b>	
<b>tablespace</b>	A part of a database structure. Each database is logically divided into one or more tablespaces. Each tablespace has data files or raw volumes exclusively associated with it.
<b>tapeless backup (ZDB specific term)</b>	See ZDB to disk.
<b>target (R2) device</b>	<p><i>(EMC Symmetrix specific term)</i> An EMC Symmetrix device that participates in SRDF operations with a source (R1) device. It resides in the remote EMC Symmetrix unit. It is paired with a source (R1) device in the local EMC Symmetrix unit and receives all write data from its mirrored pair. This device is not accessed by user applications during normal I/O operations. An R2 device must be assigned to an RDF2 group type.</p> <p>See also source (R1) device.</p>
<b>target database</b>	<i>(Oracle specific term)</i> In RMAN, the target database is the database that you are backing up or restoring.
<b>target system</b>	<i>(disaster recovery specific term)</i> A system after a computer disaster has occurred. The target system is typically in a non-bootable state and the goal of disaster recovery is to restore this system to the original system configuration. The difference between a faulty system and a target system is that a target system has all faulty hardware replaced.
<b>target volume</b>	<i>(ZDB specific term)</i> A storage volume to which data is replicated.
<b>Terminal Services</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> Windows Terminal Services provide a multi-session environment that allows clients to access a virtual Windows desktop session and Windows-based programs running on the server.
<b>thread</b>	<i>(Microsoft SQL Server specific term)</i> An executable entity that belongs to only one process. It comprises a program counter, a user-mode stack, a kernel-mode stack, and a set of register values. Several threads can run at a time within one process.
<b>TimeFinder</b>	<i>(EMC Symmetrix specific term)</i> A business continuation process that creates an instant copy of single or multiple Symmetrix Logical Devices (SLDs). The instant copy is created on specially preconfigured SLDs called BCVs and is accessible via a separate device address to the system(s).
<b>TLU</b>	Tape Library Unit.

<b>TNSNAMES.ORA</b>	<i>(Oracle and SAP R/3 specific term)</i> A network configuration file that contains connect descriptors mapped to service names. The file may be maintained centrally or locally, for use by all or individual clients.
<b>transaction</b>	A mechanism for ensuring that a set of actions is treated as a single unit of work. Databases use transactions to keep track of database changes.
<b>transaction backup</b>	Transaction backups generally use fewer resources than database backups, so they can be created more frequently than database backups. By applying transaction backups, you can recover the database to a specific point in time prior to when a problem occurred.
<b>transaction backup</b>	<i>(Sybase and SQL specific term)</i> A backup of the transaction log providing a record of changes made since the last full or transaction backup.
<b>transaction log backup</b>	Transaction log backups generally use fewer resources than database backups so they can be created more frequently than database backups. By applying transaction log backups, you can recover the database to a specific point in time.
<b>transaction log files</b>	Files that record transactions of the database modifications, and provide fault tolerance in case of a database disaster.
<b>transaction log table</b>	<i>(Sybase specific term)</i> A system table in which all changes to the database are automatically recorded.
<b>transaction logs</b>	<i>(Data Protector specific term)</i> Keep track of IDB changes. The archiving of transaction logs should be enabled to prevent you from losing the transaction log files that are created after the last IDB backup and are necessary for IDB recovery.
<b>transportable snapshot</b>	<i>(Microsoft VSS specific term)</i> A shadow copy that is created on the application system and can be presented to the backup system where a backup can be performed. See also Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS).
<b>TSANDS.CFG file</b>	<i>(Novell NetWare specific term)</i> A file that allows you to specify the names of containers where you want backups to begin. It is a text file located in the <code>SYS:SYSTEM\TSA</code> directory on the server where <code>TSANDS.NLM</code> is loaded.

## U

<b>UIProxy</b>	The Java GUI Server (UIProxy service) runs on the Data Protector Cell Manager. It is responsible for communication between the Java GUI Client and the Cell Manager, moreover, it performs business logic operations and sends only important information to the client. The service is started as soon as Data Protector is installed on the Cell Manager.
<b>unattended operation</b>	See lights-out operation.
<b>user account (Data Protector user account)</b>	You can use Data Protector only if you have a Data Protector user account, which restricts unauthorized access to Data Protector and to backed up data. Data Protector administrators create this account specifying a user logon name, the systems from which the user can log on, and a Data Protector user group membership. This is checked whenever the user starts the Data Protector user interface or performs specific tasks.
<b>User Account Control (UAC)</b>	A security component in Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2012 that limits application software to standard user privileges until an administrator authorizes an increase in privilege level.
<b>user disk quotas</b>	NTFS quota-management support enables an enhanced tracking mechanism and control over disk space usage on shared storage volumes. Data Protector backs up user disk quotas on the whole system and for all configured users at a time.
<b>user group</b>	Each Data Protector user is member of a User Group. Each User Group has a set of user rights that are given to every user in that User Group. The number of User Groups with their associated user rights can be defined as desired. Data Protector provides three default user groups: admin, operator, and user.
<b>user profile</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> Configuration information retained on a user basis. This information includes desktop settings, screen colors, network connections, and so on. When the user logs on, the user profile is loaded and the Windows environment is set accordingly.

<b>user rights</b>	User rights or access rights are the permissions needed to perform specific Data Protector tasks. Configuring a backup, starting a backup session, or starting a restore session are typical user rights. Users have the access rights of the user group to which they belong.
<b>user_restrictions file</b>	A file that restricts specific user actions, which are available to Data Protector user groups according to the user rights assigned to them, to be performed only on specific systems of the Data Protector cell. Such restrictions apply only to Data Protector user groups other than <i>admin</i> and <i>operator</i> .
<b>V</b>	
<b>vaulting media</b>	The process of storing media to a safe and remote place. The media are brought back to the data center when they are needed for restore or are ready for reuse in subsequent backups. The vaulting procedure depends on your company's backup strategy and policies for data protection/reliability.
<b>verify</b>	A function that lets you check whether the Data Protector data on a specified medium is readable. Additionally, consistency within each block can be checked if the backup was performed with the cyclic redundancy check (CRC) option ON.
<b>Virtual Controller Software (VCS)</b>	<i>(HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term)</i> The firmware that manages all aspects of storage system operation, including communication with HP Command View EVA through the HSV controllers. <i>See also</i> HP Command View (CV) EVA.
<b>Virtual Device Interface</b>	<i>(Microsoft SQL Server specific term)</i> This is a Microsoft SQL Server programming interface that allows fast backup and restore of large databases.
<b>virtual disk</b>	<i>(HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family specific term)</i> A unit of storage allocated from a storage pool of a disk array of the HP P6000 EVA Disk Array Family. A virtual disk is the entity that can be replicated using the snapshot functionality of such disk array. <i>See also</i> source volume and target volume.
<b>virtual full backup</b>	An efficient type of synthetic backup where data is consolidated using pointers instead of being copied. It is performed if all the backups (the full backup, incremental backups, and the resulting virtual full backup) are written to a single file library that uses distributed file medium format.
<b>Virtual Library System (VLS)</b>	A disk-based data storage device hosting one or more virtual tape libraries (VTLs).
<b>virtual server</b>	A virtual machine in a cluster environment defined in a domain by a network IP name and address. Its address is cached by the cluster software and mapped to the cluster node that is currently running the virtual server resources. This way all requests for a particular virtual server are cached by a specific cluster node.
<b>virtual tape</b>	<i>(VLS specific term)</i> An archival storage technology that backs up data to disk drives in the same way as if it were being stored on tape. Benefits of virtual tape systems include improved backup and recovery speed and lower operating costs. <i>See also</i> Virtual Library System (VLS) and Virtual Tape Library (VTL).
<b>Virtual Tape Library (VTL)</b>	<i>(VLS specific term)</i> An emulated tape library that provides the functionality of traditional tape-based storage. <i>See also</i> Virtual Library System (VLS).
<b>VMware management client</b>	<i>(VMware (Legacy) integration specific term)</i> The client that Data Protector uses to communicate with VMware Virtual Infrastructure. This can be a VirtualCenter Server system (VirtualCenter environment) or an ESX Server system (standalone ESX Server environment).
<b>volser</b>	<i>(ADIC and STK specific term)</i> A VOLUME SERIAL number is a label on the medium to identify the physical tape used in very large libraries. A volser is a naming convention specific to ADIC/GRAU and StorageTek devices.
<b>volume group</b>	A unit of data storage in an LVM system. A volume group can consist of one or more physical volumes. There can be more than one volume group on the system.
<b>volume mountpoint</b>	<i>(Windows specific term)</i> An empty directory on a volume that can be used to mount another volume. The volume mount point acts as a gateway to the target volume. Provided that the volume is mounted, users and applications can refer to the data on the mounted volume by the full (merged) filesystem path as if both volumes are one integral part.

<b>Volume Shadow Copy Service</b>	See Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS).
<b>VSS</b>	See Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS).
<b>VSS compliant mode</b>	<i>(HP P9000 XP Disk Array Family VSS provider specific term)</i> One of two P9000 XP Array VSS hardware provider operation modes. When the P9000 XP Array provider is in the VSS compliant mode, the source volume (P-VOL) and its replica (S-VOL) are in simplex, unpaired state after a backup. Therefore the number of replicas (S-VOLs per a P-VOL) rotated is not limited. Restore from a backup in such a configuration is possible only by switching the disks. See also resync mode, source volume, primary volume (P-VOL), replica, secondary volume (S-VOL), and replica set rotation.
<b>VxFS</b>	Veritas Journal Filesystem.
<b>VxVM (Veritas Volume Manager)</b>	A Veritas Volume Manager is a system for managing disk space on Solaris platforms. A VxVM system consists of an arbitrary group of one or more physical volumes organized into logical disk groups.
<b>W</b>	
<b>Wake ONLAN</b>	Remote power-up support for systems running in power-save mode from some other system on the same LAN.
<b>Web reporting</b>	The Data Protector functionality that allows you to view reports on backup, object copy, and object consolidation status and Data Protector configuration using the Web interface.
<b>wildcard character</b>	A keyboard character that can be used to represent one or many characters. The asterisk (*), for example, typically represents one or more characters, and the question mark (?) typically represents a single character. Wildcard characters are often used in operating systems as a means of specifying more than one file by name.
<b>Windows configuration backup</b>	Data Protector allows you to back up Windows CONFIGURATION, including Windows Registry, user profiles, Event Logs, and WINS and DHCP server data (if configured on a system) in one step.
<b>Windows Registry</b>	A centralized database used by Windows to store configuration information for the operating system and the installed applications.
<b>WINS server</b>	A system running Windows Internet Name Service software that resolves Windows networking computer names to IP addresses. Data Protector can back up WINS server data as part of the Windows configuration.
<b>writer</b>	<i>(Microsoft VSS specific term)</i> A process that initiates change of data on the original volume. Writers are typically applications or system services that write persistent information on a volume. Writers also participate in the shadow copy synchronization process by assuring data consistency.
<b>X</b>	
<b>XBSA interface</b>	<i>(Informix Server specific term)</i> ON-Bar and Data Protector communicate with each other through the X/Open Backup Services Application Programmer's Interface (XBSA).
<b>Z</b>	
<b>ZDB</b>	See zero downtime backup (ZDB).
<b>ZDB database</b>	<i>(ZDB specific term)</i> A part of the IDB, storing ZDB-related information such as source volumes, replicas, and security information. The ZDB database is used in zero downtime backup, instant recovery, and split mirror restore sessions. See also zero downtime backup (ZDB).
<b>ZDB to disk</b>	<i>(ZDB specific term)</i> A form of zero downtime backup where the replica produced is kept on the disk array as a backup of the source volumes at a specific point in time. Multiple replicas, produced using the same backup specification at different times, can be kept in a replica set. A replica from ZDB to disk can be restored using the instant recovery process. See also zero downtime backup (ZDB), ZDB to tape, ZDB to disk+tape, instant recovery, and replica set rotation.

<b>ZDB to disk+tape</b>	<p><i>(ZDB specific term)</i> A form of zero downtime backup where the replica produced is kept on the disk array as a backup of the source volumes at a specific point in time, in the same way as with ZDB to disk. However, data in the replica is also streamed to a backup medium, as with ZDB to tape. If this backup method is used, data backed up in the same session can be restored using the instant recovery process, the standard Data Protector restore from tape, or with specific disk array families, split mirror restore.</p> <p>See also zero downtime backup (ZDB), ZDB to disk, ZDB to tape, instant recovery, replica, and replica set rotation.</p>
<b>ZDB to tape</b>	<p><i>(ZDB specific term)</i> A form of zero downtime backup where data in the replica produced is streamed to a backup medium, typically tape. Instant recovery is not possible from such a backup, so the replica need not be retained on the disk array after backup completion. The backed up data can be restored using standard Data Protector restore from tape. With specific disk array families, split mirror restore can also be used.</p> <p>See also zero downtime backup (ZDB), ZDB to disk, ZDB to disk+tape, instant recovery, and replica.</p>
<b>zero downtime backup (ZDB)</b>	<p>A backup approach in which data replication techniques, provided by a disk array, are used to minimize the impact of backup operations on an application system. A replica of the data to be backed up is created first. All subsequent backup operations are performed on the replicated data rather than the original data, while the application system can be returned to normal operation.</p> <p>See also ZDB to disk, ZDB to tape, ZDB to disk+tape, and instant recovery.</p>

---

# Index

## A

- ASR, [20](#), [59](#)
- Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery
  - drsetup diskettes, [29](#)
  - limitations, Windows, [28](#)
  - overview, Windows, [27](#)
  - preparation, Windows, [28](#)
  - procedure, Windows, [30](#)
  - requirements, Windows, [27](#)
  - Windows system, [27](#)
- audience, [8](#)
- Automated System Recovery, [59](#)
  - ASR diskettes, [62](#)
  - ASR set, [61](#)
  - limitations, [60](#)
  - preparation, [61](#)
  - recovery, [63](#)
  - requirements, [60](#)
- Automated System Recovery set, [61](#)
- auxiliary disk, [81](#)
  - creating, [83](#)

## B

- backup
  - creating consistent, [23](#)
- backup specification
  - creating for recovery, [83](#)
- BitLocker Drive Encryption, [74](#)
- boot partition, [16](#)
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, [32](#)
  - Enhanced Disaster Recovery, [21](#)
- bootable installation CD, [28](#)

## C

- Cell Manager
  - Manual Disaster Recovery, Linux, [98](#)
  - Manual Disaster Recovery, UNIX, [86](#)
  - Manual Disaster Recovery, Windows, [69](#)
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Linux, [93](#)
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Windows, [47](#)
- clients
  - Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery, Windows, [27](#)
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, UNIX client, [81](#)
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Linux, [93](#)
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Windows, [47](#)
- concepts, [16](#)
- conventions
  - document, [13](#)
- creating
  - auxiliary disk, [83](#)
  - backup specification, [83](#)
  - consistent and relevant backup, [23](#)
- critical volumes, [16](#)

## D

- Data Protector integrations and disaster recovery, [21](#)
- Debugging
  - disaster recovery session, [103](#)
- dirty flag, [23](#)
- disaster, [16](#)
- disaster recovery
  - preparing, [22](#)
- disaster recovery CD ISO image, [35](#), [86](#)
- disaster recovery methods
  - Manual Disaster Recovery, UNIX Cell Manager, [85](#)
- disaster recovery operating system (DR OS), [16](#)
- disaster recovery process overview
  - plan, [22](#)
  - prepare, [22](#)
  - recover, [22](#)
- disaster recovery session
  - debugging, [103](#)
- Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery
  - auxiliary disk, [81](#)
  - client, Windows, [32](#)
  - limitations, UNIX client, [82](#)
  - overview, [19](#)
  - preparation, UNIX client, [82](#)
  - preparation, Windows client, [33](#)
  - procedure, UNIX client, [84](#)
  - procedure, Windows client, [34](#)
  - recovered partitions, [32](#)
  - troubleshooting, Windows, [108](#)
  - UNIX client, [81](#)
- dissimilar hardware recovery, [117](#)
  - drivers needed, [119](#)
  - limitations, [118](#)
  - network mappings, [120](#)
  - overview, [117](#)
  - preparation, [119](#)
  - preparing the OS, [120](#)
  - recovery modes, [119](#)
  - recovery of the system, [119](#)
  - requirements, [118](#)
  - restoring data, [121](#)
  - restoring the OS, [120](#)
- document
  - conventions, [13](#)
  - related documentation, [8](#)
- documentation
  - HP website, [8](#)
- DR OS, [16](#)
- drivers needed for dissimilar hardware recovery, [119](#)
- drm.cfg file, [105](#)
  - enable\_disshw option, [118](#)

## E

- EADR, [86](#)
- Encrypted backups



- preparation, 23
- encryption keys
  - preparing, 40, 90
- Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, 34, 86
  - client, 34, 86
  - disaster recovery CD, 90
  - disaster recovery CD ISO image, 20, 40, 90
  - DR image, 39, 88
  - DR OS image file, 20, 34, 86
  - limitations, Linux client, 88
  - limitations, Windows client, 37
  - overview, Linux client, 87
  - overview, Windows client, 35
  - Phase 1 Startup file (P1S), 40, 90
  - preparation, Linux client, 88
  - preparation, Windows client, 38
  - procedure, Linux client, 91
  - procedure, Windows client, 42
  - requirements, Linux client, 87
  - requirements, Windows client, 36
  - to dissimilar hardware, 117
- Enhanced Disaster Recovery
  - overview, 20
  - recovered partitions, 21
  - troubleshooting, Windows, 109

## H

- hardware, recovery to different, 117
- help
  - obtaining, 14
- hosting system, 16
- HP
  - technical support, 14

## I

- integrations and disaster recovery, 21
- Itanium specifics
  - troubleshooting, 112

## L

- limitations
  - Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery, Windows, 28
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, UNIX client, 82
  - dissimilar hardware recovery, 118
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, Linux client, 88
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, Windows client, 37
  - Manual Disaster Recovery, UNIX Cell Manager, 85
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, 33
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Linux client, 94
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Windows client, 49
- Linux
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, client, 86
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, 93
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Cell Manager, 93
- Linux systems
  - troubleshooting, 113
- logging on

- problems after disaster recovery, 106

## M

- Manual Disaster Recovery, 19
  - Cell Manager, Linux, 98
  - Cell Manager, UNIX, 85
  - Cell Manager, Windows, 69
  - limitations, UNIX Cell Manager, 85
  - preparation, UNIX Cell Manager, 85
  - procedure, UNIX Cell Manager, 86
- methods
  - Automated System Recovery, 20, 59
  - Disk Delivery, 32, 81
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, 19
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, 34, 86
  - Enhanced Disaster Recovery, 20
  - Manual Disaster Recovery, 19
  - Manual Disaster Recovery, Windows, 27
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, 20, 47, 93
  - overview, 18
  - table of, 18
- migration to a another machine, 117

## N

- network mappings in dissimilar hardware recovery, 120

## O

- OBDR, 20, 47, 93 see One Button Disaster Recovery
- omnisrupdate
  - post-exec script, 24
  - standalone, 24
- One Button Disaster Recovery, 20, 47
  - limitations, 33
  - limitations, Linux client, 94
  - limitations, Windows client, 49
  - Linux system, 93
  - overview, 32
  - preparation, Linux client, 94
  - preparation, Windows client, 50
  - procedure, Windows, 54
  - Windows system, 47
- One Button Disaster Recovery (OBDR)
  - procedure, Linux, 96
- original system, 16
- OS partition
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, 32
  - Enhanced Disaster Recovery, 21
- overview
  - Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery, Windows, 27
  - disaster recovery, 16
  - disaster recovery methods, 18
  - dissimilar hardware recovery, 117

## P

- Phase 0, 17
- Phase 1, 17
- Phase 2, 17
- Phase 3, 17
- phases, 17

- in dissimilar hardware recovery, 117
- planning
  - disaster recovery, 22
- preparation
  - encrypted backups, 23
- preparing
  - Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery, Windows, 28
  - Automated System Recovery, 61
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, UNIX client, 82
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, Windows client, 33
  - dissimilar hardware recovery, 119
  - encryption keys, 40, 90
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, Linux client, 88
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, Windows client, 38
  - for disaster recovery, 22
  - Manual Disaster Recovery, UNIX Cell Manager, 85
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Linux client, 94
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Windows client, 50
- preparing for a disaster recovery, 22

## R

- recovering
  - Cell Manager, UNIX, 86
- recovery, 17
  - to dissimilar hardware, 117
- recovery procedure, 86
  - Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery, Windows , 30
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, UNIX client, 84
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, Windows client, 34
  - dissimilar hardware recovery, 119
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, Linux client, 91
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, Windows client, 42
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Linux, 96
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Windows, 54
- related documentation, 8
- requirements
  - Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery, Windows, 27
  - dissimilar hardware recovery, 118
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, Linux client, 87
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, Windows client, 36

## S

- Subscriber's Choice, HP, 14
- system partition, 16
- System Recovery Data (SRD), 24
- system specific disaster recovery methods, 19
- system specific methods, 19

## T

- table of disaster recovery methods, 18
- target system, 16
- technical support
  - HP, 14

- service locator website, 15
- troubleshooting
  - disaster recovery on Windows, 102
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, Windows, 108
  - Enhanced Disaster Recovery, Windows, 109
  - Itanium specifics, 112
  - Linux systems, 113
  - logging on after disaster recovery, 106

## U

- UNIX Cell Manager
  - Manual Disaster Recovery, 85
  - recovery procedure, 86
- UNIX client
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, 81
- update SRD File, Wizard, 24
- updating system recovery data (SRD), 24

## W

- websites
  - HP , 15
  - HP Subscriber's Choice for Business, 14
  - product manuals, 8
- Windows
  - ASR, 59
  - Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery, 27
  - Assisted Manual Disaster Recovery, client, 27
  - Automated System Recovery set, 61
  - BitLocker Drive Encryption, 74
  - Disk Delivery Disaster Recovery, client, 32
  - Enhanced Automated Disaster Recovery, client, 34
  - Manual Disaster Recovery, Cell Manager, 27
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, 47
  - One Button Disaster Recovery, Cell Manager, 47
  - troubleshooting disaster recovery, 102